



POWER NETWORKS

NETWORK TECHNICAL CODE
and
NETWORK PLANNING CRITERIA

Version 3.1

December 2013

Table of Contents

Introduction	1
Structure of this document	1
Document nomenclature	1
Document amendment	1
Part A Legislative requirements	2
<i>Network Technical Code</i>	3
<i>Network Planning Criteria</i>	4
Part B - <i>Network Technical Code</i>	5
1 Application	5
1.1 Persons to whom the <i>Code</i> applies	5
1.2 <i>Plant</i> and equipment to which the <i>Code</i> applies	5
1.3 Other documents	5
1.4 Commencement.....	5
1.5 Interpretation	6
1.6 Dispute resolution.....	6
1.7 Obligations	7
1.8 Variations and exemptions from the <i>Code</i>	9
1.9 Amendments to the <i>Code</i>	9
2 <i>Network</i> performance standards	10
2.1 Introduction.....	10
2.2 <i>Power system</i> operating frequency.....	10
2.3 <i>Power frequency</i> voltage levels.....	11
2.4 <i>Quality of supply</i>	11
2.5 Electromagnetic interference	14
2.6 Stability	14
2.7 <i>Contingency criteria</i> for the <i>network</i>	15
2.8 Equipment fault level ratings.....	15
2.9 <i>Protection</i> arrangements.....	16
2.10 Variation of service quality parameters	21
3 Technical requirements for equipment <i>connected</i> to the <i>network</i>	22
3.1 Introduction.....	22
3.2 Requirements for all <i>network Users</i>	22
3.3 Requirements for <i>connection</i> of <i>Generators</i>	33
3.4 Requirements for <i>connection</i> of <i>Small Generators</i>	49
3.5 Requirements for <i>connection</i> of <i>Small Inverter Energy Systems</i>	57
3.6 Requirements for <i>connection</i> of <i>loads</i>	60
4 <i>Power system</i> security	63
4.1 Introduction.....	63
4.2 <i>Power system</i> security principles	63
4.3 <i>Power system</i> security obligations and responsibilities	65
4.4 <i>Power system</i> frequency control.....	68
4.5 Control of <i>network</i> voltages.....	69

4.6	<i>Power system operating procedures</i>	71
4.7	<i>Power system security operations</i>	72
4.8	<i>Power system security support</i>	75
4.9	<i>Nomenclature standards</i>	77
5	Testing of <i>plant</i> and equipment	79
5.1	Obligations to test <i>plant</i> or equipment.....	79
5.2	Routine testing of <i>protection</i> equipment.....	80
5.3	Testing by <i>Users</i> of their own <i>plant</i> requiring <i>changes</i> to agreed operation	80
5.4	Tests to demonstrate <i>Generator</i> compliance	81
5.5	<i>Power system</i> tests	83
5.6	Compliance with the <i>Network Technical Code</i>	84
5.7	Inspection of <i>plant</i> and equipment.....	86
6	Control and <i>protection</i> settings	89
6.1	<i>Protection</i> of <i>power system</i> equipment	89
6.2	<i>Power system</i> stability co-ordination.....	91
7	Commissioning and testing procedures	93
7.1	Commissioning.....	93
8	<i>Disconnection</i> and <i>reconnection</i> of <i>plant</i> and equipment	96
9	Operation of <i>Generators</i> connected to the <i>network</i>	98
9.1	<i>Power system</i> security related market operations	98
9.2	<i>Users' plant</i> changes	99
9.3	Operation, maintenance and <i>extension</i> planning.....	100
9.4	Generating limits	100
10	<i>Metering</i> requirements	101
10.1	Purpose of <i>metering</i> clause	101
10.2	<i>Metering</i> principles.....	101
10.3	Responsibility for <i>metering</i> installation	102
10.4	<i>Metering</i> installation arrangements	103
10.5	Register of <i>metering</i> information	105
10.6	Testing of <i>metering</i> installation.....	106
10.7	Rights of access to <i>metering</i> data	106
10.8	Security of <i>metering</i> installations.....	107
10.9	Processing of <i>metering</i> data for settlement purposes	107
10.10	Confidentiality	108
10.11	Meter <i>time</i>	109
11	Information requirements for <i>network</i> connection	110
11.1	Scope.....	110
11.2	Information to be provided by all <i>network</i> <i>Users</i>	110
11.3	Information to be provided by <i>Users</i> with <i>Generators</i>	111
11.4	Information to be provided by <i>Users</i> with <i>Small Generators</i>	112
11.5	Information to be provided by <i>Users</i> with <i>Small Inverter Energy Systems</i>	113
11.6	Information to be provided by <i>Users</i> with <i>loads</i>	113

12	<i>Derogations from the Code</i>	114
12.1	Purpose and application.....	114
12.2	<i>Networks</i> and facilities existing at 1 September 2012	114
Part C <i>Network Planning Criteria</i>		115
13	Introduction	115
13.1	<i>Network</i> design philosophy	116
13.2	Amendments to the <i>Planning Criteria</i>	116
13.3	132 kV and 66 kV <i>networks</i>	116
13.4	<i>Distribution networks</i>	117
13.5	Process to assess the need for <i>network</i> reinforcement	118
13.6	The process of developing <i>network</i> concept plans	119
13.7	<i>Planning Criteria</i>	119
13.8	<i>Network</i> development	119
13.9	Investment analysis and reporting.....	121
14	<i>Supply</i> contingency criteria	122
14.1	<i>Load</i> areas	122
14.2	<i>Supply</i> contingencies.....	123
14.3	Equipment capacities	123
14.4	Forecast <i>demand</i>	123
14.5	Radial <i>supply</i> arrangements	124
14.6	<i>Supply</i> contingency criteria	124
15	Steady state criteria	128
15.1	Real and reactive generating limits.....	128
15.2	Steady state power <i>frequency voltage</i>	128
15.3	Thermal rating criteria	129
15.4	Fault rating criteria	130
16	Stability criteria	130
16.1	Transient stability	131
16.2	<i>Voltage</i> stability criteria.....	134
16.3	<i>Frequency</i> stability criteria	136
17	<i>Quality of supply</i> criteria	136
17.1	<i>Voltage</i> fluctuation criteria	137
17.2	Harmonic <i>voltage</i> and current distortion.....	140
17.3	<i>Voltage</i> unbalance	141
17.4	Electromagnetic interference	141
18	Construction standards criteria	141
18.1	Conductor selection criteria	142
19	Environmental criteria	143
19.1	Social issues	143
19.2	Electromagnetic fields.....	143
19.3	Land-Use considerations	144
19.4	Noise	144

19.5 Visual amenity	144
Part D Attachments	145
Attachment 1 Glossary of Terms.....	145
Attachment 2 Rules of interpretation	160
Attachment 3 Technical details for <i>connection</i> and access	161
Schedule S3.1 <i>Generation Unit</i> design data.....	163
Schedule S3.2 <i>Generation Unit</i> setting data	170
Schedule S3.3 <i>Generator</i> data for small <i>Generation Units</i>	171
Schedule S3.4 Technical data for <i>Small Inverter Energy Systems</i>	172
Schedule S3.5 <i>Network</i> and <i>plant</i> technical data.....	173
Schedule S3.6 <i>Network plant</i> and apparatus setting data.....	175
Schedule S3.7 <i>Load</i> characteristics at <i>connection point</i>	176
Attachment 4 <i>Metering</i> requirements	177
Attachment 5 Test schedule	180
Attachment 6 <i>Access Application</i> schedule	185

Introduction

Transmission and distribution networks owned by Power and Water cover the major centres of the Northern Territory. The legislated Third Party Access regime gives rights to private Generators and load customers to use the networks to enable contracted trade between Generator Users and Customer Users.

Structure of this document

This document comprises the following parts:

- Part A** The legislative requirements that apply to *Power and Water Networks* and to *customers* seeking access to its regulated electrical *networks*.
- Part B** The ***Network Technical Code*** sets out technical requirements designed to ensure that the *network* and the *customer* installations and equipment *connected* to the *network* may be operated and maintained in a secure and *reliable* manner.
- Part C** The ***Network Planning Criteria*** are designed to ensure that new *loads* and *Generators connected* to the *network* do not compromise the security and *reliability of supply* to all *network Users*.
- Part D** Attachments, including, amongst other things, a Glossary of terms and Schedules of the information that is required to be provided by *customers* seeking to *connect* to *Power and Water's* regulated *networks*.

The *Network Technical Code* and *Network Planning Criteria* apply to *Power and Water's* regulated *networks*.

Document nomenclature

Terms defined in the Glossary of this document are *italicised*.

Explanatory and contextual material is included in boxed sections that do not form part of the *Network Technical Code* or *Network Planning Criteria*.

Document amendment

This document is subject to amendment in accordance with the legislative provisions and users of the document are advised to obtain the current version from the Manager Regulation, Pricing and Economic Analysis, at the following address:

Power and Water Corporation
Level 7, Mitchell Centre, Darwin NT 0800
GPO Box 1921. Darwin NT 0801
Telephone: (08) 8985 8431
Facsimile: (08) 8923 9527

The document is also available from *Power and Water's* Internet site at the following address: <http://www.powerwater.com.au/>.

Part A Legislative requirements

This document is prepared pursuant to the Northern Territory *Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Act* (TPA Act), as in force at 1 August 2012.

The Northern Territory Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Code (Network Access Code) is established in Part 2 of the TPA Act and the accompanying Schedule. The Network Access Code sets out:

- (a) The terms and conditions under which access to an *electricity network* is to be granted to third party *Users* and the associated obligations both on the *network provider* and on *network Users*;
- (b) The framework within which *Access Agreements* are to be negotiated and implemented; and
- (c) The mechanism for resolving access disputes.

Clause 9, sub clause (2) of the Network Access Code requires the *network provider* to prepare and make publicly available a *Network Technical Code* and *Network Planning Criteria*.

Clause 30, sub clause (2) of the Network Access Code states that all *network Users* shall comply with the *Network Technical Code* regarding *connection* to and use of the *electricity network*.

Network Technical Code

Schedule 1, clause 1 of the Network Access Code lists the requirements of the *Network Technical Code*. This *Network Technical Code* sets out the following matters. The relevant clauses of this document are also referenced in Table 1.

Table 1 – Requirements of the *Network Technical Code*

Code requirement	clause
(a) performance standards in respect of service quality parameters in relation to the <i>electricity network</i> ;	2
(b) the technical requirements that apply to the design or operation of <i>plant</i> or equipment <i>connected</i> to the <i>electricity network</i> ;	3
(c) requirements relating to the operation of the <i>electricity network</i> (including the operation of the <i>network</i> in emergency situations);	4
(d) obligations to test <i>plant</i> or equipment in order to demonstrate compliance with the <i>Network Technical Code</i> ;	5.1
(e) procedures that apply if the <i>network</i> provider believes that an item of <i>plant</i> or equipment does not comply with the requirements of the <i>Network Technical Code</i> ;	5.6
(f) requirements relating to the inspection of <i>plant</i> or equipment <i>connected</i> to the <i>electricity network</i> ;	5.7
(g) requirements that relate to control and <i>protection</i> settings for <i>plant</i> or equipment <i>connected</i> to the <i>electricity network</i> ;	6
(h) procedures that apply in the case of commissioning and testing of new <i>plant</i> or equipment <i>connected</i> to the <i>electricity network</i> ;	7
(i) aside from matters appropriately dealt with in the <i>System Control Technical Code</i> , procedures that apply to the <i>disconnection</i> and <i>reconnection</i> of <i>plant</i> or equipment from the <i>electricity network</i> ;	8
(j) aside from matters appropriately dealt with in the <i>System Control Technical Code</i> , procedures relating to the operation of <i>Generating Units</i> <i>connected</i> to the <i>electricity network</i> (including the giving of <i>dispatch</i> instructions and compliance with those instructions);	9
(k) <i>metering</i> requirements in relation to <i>connections</i> ; and	10
(l) the information required to be provided to the <i>Network Operator</i> in relation to the operation of <i>plant</i> or equipment <i>connected</i> to the <i>electricity network</i> at a <i>connection</i> and how and when that information is to be provided.	11

Network Planning Criteria

Schedule 1, clause 2 of the Network Access Code lists the matters that shall be contained in the *Network Planning Criteria*. The relevant clauses of this document are referenced in Table 2.

Table 2 – Requirements of the *Network Planning Criteria*

Planning criterion	clause
(a) contingency criteria;	14.6
(b) steady-state criteria including:	15
(i) <i>voltage</i> limits;	15.2
(ii) thermal rating criteria; and	15.3
(iii) fault rating criteria;	15.4
(c) stability criteria including:	16
(i) transient stability criteria; and	16.1
(ii) <i>voltage</i> stability criteria;	16.2
(d) <i>quality of supply</i> criteria including:	17
(i) <i>voltage</i> fluctuation criteria;	17.1
(ii) harmonic <i>voltage</i> criteria;	17.2
(iii) harmonic current criteria;	17.2
(iv) <i>voltage</i> unbalance criteria; and	17.3
(v) electro-magnetic interference criteria;	17.4
(e) construction standards criteria; and	18
(f) environmental criteria.	19

Part B - Network Technical Code

1 Application

In this *Network Technical Code (Code)*, unless otherwise stated, a reference to *Network Operator* or *Power System Controller* refers to the appropriate business unit of the *Power and Water Corporation*.

1.1 Persons to whom the Code applies

- (a) *Power and Water Corporation* in its role as the operator of the *electricity network (Network Operator)*;
- (b) *Power and Water Corporation* in its role as the *Power System Controller*;
- (c) Every person who seeks access to spare capacity or new capacity or makes an *Access Application* in order to establish a *connection* or modify an existing *connection*; and
- (d) Every person to whom access to the *electricity network* is made available (including, without limitation, the *Power and Water Corporation* in its role as a trader of electricity and every person with whom the *Network Operator* has entered into an *Access Agreement*).

1.2 Plant and equipment to which the Code applies

- (a) Equipment installed in the *Network Operator's electricity networks*; and
- (b) Equipment installed by *Users* who are *connected* (either directly or indirectly) to the *electricity networks*.

1.3 Other documents

- (a) This *Code* and the Network Planning Criteria at Part C shall be read in conjunction with the following *Power and Water Corporation* documents:
 - (1) Service Rules;
 - (2) Installation Rules;
 - (3) Metering Manual;
 - (4) Network Policies and Safe Working Procedures; and
 - (5) *System Control Technical Code*.

1.4 Commencement

- (a) Version 1 of the *Code* came into operation on 1 April 2000 ("*Code commencement date*").
- (b) Amendment 2.0 of the *Code* was entitled the Network Connection Technical Code and was issued in April 2003.

- (c) This Version 3.1 amendment of the *Network Technical Code* and *Network Planning Criteria* has been made in accordance with legislative provisions and takes effect from December 2013.

1.5 Interpretation

- (a) In this *Code*, words and phrases are defined in Attachment 1 and have the meanings given to them in Attachment 1, unless the contrary intention appears.
- (b) This *Code* shall be interpreted in accordance with the rules of interpretation set out in Attachment 2, unless the contrary intention appears.

1.5.1 Conflict between *Technical Codes*

- (a) A conflict exists when there is a difference in substance or interpretation of the provisions contained in the *Network Technical Code* and provisions contained in the *System Control Technical Code* relating to *power system*:
 - (1) *reliability*;
 - (2) *safety*;
 - (3) *security*;
 - (4) *operational issues*; or
 - (5) *procedures*.
- (b) In the event of a conflict and to the extent of any inconsistency, the provisions of the *System Control Technical Code* will prevail over the *Network Technical Code*.
- (c) Where a conflict cannot be resolved under sub clause (b), consultations will take place between:
 - (1) the *Power System Controller*;
 - (2) the *Network Operator*; and
 - (3) any affected *Users*.
- (d) An affected *User* is a *User* who provides evidence to the *Power System Controller* and in the opinion of the *Power System Controller* the evidence proves the *User's* sufficient interest in consultations.

1.6 Dispute resolution

- (a) Should a dispute arise between a *User* and the *Network Operator* concerning this *Code*, the *Network Operator* shall negotiate with the *User* to determine mutually acceptable agreed outcomes.
- (b) If an agreement cannot be reached between these two parties, the Utilities Commissioner shall arbitrate the dispute.

1.7 Obligations

1.7.1 Obligations of the *Network Operator*

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall comply with the *power system* performance and *quality of supply* standards:
 - (1) described in this *Code*; and
 - (2) in accordance with any *Access Agreement* with a *User*.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall:
 - (1) ensure that to the extent that a *connection point* relates to the *electricity network*, every arrangement for *connection* with a *User* complies with all relevant provisions of this *Code*;
 - (2) permit and participate in inspection and testing of facilities and equipment in accordance with clause 5.1;
 - (3) permit and participate in commissioning of facilities and equipment which is to be *connected* to its *network* in accordance with clause 7;
 - (4) advise a *User* with whom there is an *Access Agreement* of any expected interruption characteristics at a *connection point* on or with its *network* so that the *User* may make alternative arrangements for *supply* during such interruptions, including negotiating for an alternative or backup *connection*; and
 - (5) use its reasonable endeavours to ensure that modelling data used for planning, design and operational purposes is complete and accurate and order tests in accordance with clause 5.5 where there are reasonable grounds to question the validity of data.
- (c) The *Network Operator* shall arrange for:
 - (1) management, maintenance and operation of the *electricity network* such that in the *satisfactory operating state*, electricity may be transferred continuously at a *connection point* up to the *agreed capability*;
 - (2) management, maintenance and operation of its *network* to minimise the number of interruptions to *agreed capability* at a *connection point* on or with that *network* by using *good electricity industry practice*; and
 - (3) restoration of the *agreed capability* as soon as reasonably practical following any interruption at a *connection point* on or with its *network*.

1.7.2 Obligations of *Users*

- (a) All *Users* shall maintain and operate (or ensure their authorised *representatives* maintain and operate) all equipment that is part of their facilities in accordance with:
 - (1) relevant laws;

- (2) the requirements of this *Code*; and
 - (3) *good electricity industry practice* and applicable *Australian Standards*.
- (b) Each *User* shall:
- (1) comply with the reasonable requirements of the *Network Operator* in respect of design requirements of equipment proposed to be *connected* to the *network* of the *Network Operator* in accordance with clause 3;
 - (2) permit and participate in inspection and testing of facilities and equipment in accordance with clause 5.1;
 - (3) permit and participate in commissioning of facilities and equipment which is to be *connected* to a *network* location for the first *time* in accordance with clause 7;
 - (4) operate facilities and equipment in accordance with any reasonable *direction* given by the *Network Operator* and *Power System Controller*; and
 - (5) give notice of intended voluntary *disconnection* in accordance with clause 8.

1.7.3 Obligations of *Generator Users*

- (a) A *Generator User* shall comply at all times with applicable requirements and conditions of *connection* for *Generation Units*:
- (1) as set out in clauses 3.2 and 3.3; and
 - (2) in accordance with any *Access Agreement* with the *Network Operator*.

1.7.4 Obligations of *Generator Users* with *Small Generators*

- (a) A *Generator User* with a *Small Generator* shall comply at all times with applicable requirements and conditions of *connection* for *Small Generation Units*:
- (1) as set out in clauses 3.2 and 3.4; and
 - (2) in accordance with any *Access Agreement* with the *Network Operator*.

1.7.5 Obligations of *Users* with *Small Inverter Energy Systems*

- (a) A *User* with a *Small Inverter Energy System* shall comply at all times with applicable requirements and conditions of *connection* for *Small Inverter Energy Systems*:
- (1) as set out in clauses 3.2 and 3.5; and
 - (2) in accordance with any *Access Agreement* with the *Network Operator*.

1.7.6 Obligations of *Users* with *loads*

- (a) Each *User* with a *load* shall ensure that all facilities which are owned, operated or controlled by it and are associated with a *connection point* at all times comply with applicable requirements and conditions of *connection* for *loads*:
 - (1) as set out in clauses 3.2 and 3.6; and
 - (2) in accordance with any *Access Agreement* with the *Network Operator*.

1.8 Variations and exemptions from the *Code*

- (a) Various clauses throughout this *Code* permit variations or exemptions from *Code* requirements to be granted to a *User* by reference to terms that include:
 - (1) the requirements may be varied, but only with the agreement of the *Network Operator*;
 - (2) unless otherwise agreed by the *Network Operator*;
 - (3) unless otherwise agreed; and
 - (4) except where specifically varied in an *Access Agreement*.
- (b) In all cases the *Network Operator* will notify in writing any such variation or exemption to *Users*.

1.9 Amendments to the *Code*

- (a) Any *System Participant* may propose an amendment to the *Code*.
- (b) A proposal to amend the *Code* shall be made in writing by the *System Participant* to the *Network Operator* and shall be accompanied by:
 - (1) the reasons for the proposed amendment to the *Code*; and
 - (2) an explanation of the effect on *System Participants* of the proposed amendment to the *Code*.
- (c) The *Network Operator* shall review the proposed amendment to the *Code* and within 30 days advise the *System Participant* or electricity entity:
 - (1) whether the proposed amendment to the *Code* is accepted or rejected; and
 - (2) the reasons for the acceptance or rejection of the proposed amendment to the *Code*.
- (d) The *Network Operator* shall review the operation of the *Code* at intervals of no more than 5 years and may seek submissions from *System Participants* and the Utilities Commission during the course of the review.
- (e) Before amending the *Code* or *Network Planning Criteria* in a material way, the *Network Operator* must consult the Utilities Commission and undertake consultation in accordance with the legislative provisions.

2 Network performance standards

2.1 Introduction

This clause 2 describes the technical performance parameters and standards for the *power system*. These standards provide the basis for the technical requirements for equipment *connected* to the *electricity network*, covered in clause 3.

2.2 Power system operating frequency

- (a) The nominal operating *frequency* of the *power system* is 50 Hz.
- (b) The accumulated synchronous *time* error shall be less than 15 seconds for 99% of the *time*.

2.2.1 Frequency range under normal operating conditions

- (a) The *frequency* ranges under normal operating conditions for the Northern Territory *regulated networks* are set out in Table 3.

Table 3 – Frequency range under normal operating conditions

Power and Water system	Frequency range
Darwin – Katherine	50 Hz ± 0.2 Hz
Alice Springs	50 Hz ± 0.2 Hz
Tennant Creek and isolated, regional distribution networks	50 Hz ± 0.4 Hz

2.2.2 Frequency range under abnormal operating conditions

- (a) To cover for the loss of a *Generation Unit* from the *power system* two measures will be applied to arrest the fall in *frequency* following the loss of *Generation* and to return the *frequency* to within normal operating levels as specified in clause 2.2.1:
 - (1) utilisation of available *spinning reserve*, under the *direction* of the *Power System Controller*; and
 - (2) *disconnection* of system *load* manually or by means of automatic *protection*.
- (b) Under abnormal operating conditions, the *network frequency* may vary between 47 Hz and 52 Hz.
- (c) In the case of operation below 47 Hz but at or above 45 Hz, all *Generation Units* shall remain *connected* to the *Network Operator's network* for a period of at least 2 seconds.
- (d) With sustained operation below 47 Hz, *under frequency load shedding* schemes may *disconnect load* on the *network* to restore *frequency* to the normal operating range, in accordance with clause 3.2.8.1.

- (e) *Frequency stability shall be satisfied under all credible power system load and generation patterns, and the most severe credible contingencies of transmission plant including the loss of interconnecting plant leading to the formation of islands within the power system.*
- (f) Each island in the *power system* that contains *generation* shall have sufficient *load shedding* facilities in accordance with clause 16 of the *Network Planning Criteria* to aid recovery of *frequency* to the range 49.5 Hz to 50.5 Hz in the *network*.
- (g) When islanding occurs the *Power System Controller* will determine which *power station* or *Generation Units* in each isolated system will regulate the *frequency* in that system.

2.3 Power frequency voltage levels

2.3.1 Steady state voltage levels

- (a) The requirements for steady-state *voltage* levels are set out in clause 15.2 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.
- (b) The specifications for *voltage* levels in clause 15.2 shall apply in this Code.
- (c) *Users'* equipment shall be designed to withstand these *voltage* levels.
- (d) The power *frequency voltage* may vary outside the ranges set out in this clause 2.3.1 as a result of a *non-credible contingency event*.

2.3.2 Temporary over-voltages

- (a) As a consequence of a *credible contingency event*, the *voltage of supply* at a *connection point* shall not rise above its normal *voltage* by more than the percentage specified in clause 17.1.1 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.
- (b) *Users'* equipment shall also be designed to withstand these *voltage* levels.
- (c) As a consequence of a *contingency event*, the *voltage of supply* at a *connection point* could fall to zero for any period.

2.3.3 Step changes in voltage levels

Step changes in the *power system voltage* levels may take place due to switching operations on the *network*. The step changes in *voltage* shall not exceed the limits set out in clause 17.1.2 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

2.4 Quality of supply

2.4.1 Voltage fluctuations

A *voltage* disturbance is where the *voltage* shape is maintained but the *voltage* magnitude varies and may fall outside the steady state *supply voltage* range set out in clause 15.2 of the *Network Planning Criteria*. Short duration *voltage* disturbances of durations of up to one minute are termed *voltage* sags and swells.

The ENA publication Customer Guide to Electricity *Supply* contains information on the typical *voltage* sags experienced on Australian *electricity networks* and how *customers* can mitigate the risks of equipment maloperation because of sags.

Rapid *voltage* fluctuations cause *changes* to the luminance of lamps, which can create the visual phenomenon termed flicker.

- (a) Under normal operating conditions, fluctuations in *voltage* on the *network* should be less than the “compatibility levels” defined in Table 1 of *Australian Standard AS/NZS 61000.3.7 (2001)*.
- (b) To facilitate the application of this standard *Power and Water* shall establish “planning levels” for its *networks*, as provided for in the *Australian Standard*.

2.4.2 Harmonic distortion

2.4.2.1 Harmonic *voltage* distortion

- (a) Under normal operating conditions, the harmonic *voltage* in the *network* shall be less than the “compatibility levels” defined in Table 1 of *Australian Standard AS/NZS 61000.3.6 (2001)*.
- (b) To facilitate the application of this standard *Power and Water* shall establish “planning levels” of harmonic distortion for its *networks* as provided for in the *Australian Standard*.
- (c) Planning levels for harmonic *voltage* distortion are specified in clause 17 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

2.4.2.2 Non-integer harmonic distortion

Inter-harmonic or non-integer harmonic distortion may arise from large converters or power electronics equipment with Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) converters interfacing with the *power system*.

- (a) Under normal operating conditions, the emission levels for inter-harmonic *voltage* in the *network* shall be less than the levels defined in section 9 of *Australian Standard AS/NZS 61000.3.6 (2001)*.
- (b) To facilitate the application of this standard *Power and Water* shall establish “planning levels” of inter-harmonic distortion for its *networks* as provided for in the *Australian Standard AS/NZS 61000.3.6 (2001)*.
- (c) Planning levels for inter-harmonic *voltage* distortion are specified in clause 17 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

2.4.2.3 Voltage notching

Voltage notching may also arise from large convertors or power electronics equipment with Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) converters interfacing with the power system.

Voltage notching caused by a User's facilities is acceptable provided that:

- (a) the limiting values of harmonic *voltage* distortion as described in clause 2.4.2.1 are not exceeded;
- (b) the average of start notch depth and end notch depth shall not exceed 20% of the nominal fundamental peak *voltage*; and
- (c) the peak amplitude of oscillations due to commutation at the start and end of the voltage notch shall not exceed 20% of the nominal fundamental peak *voltage*.

2.4.2.4 Harmonic current distortion

- (a) The harmonic *voltage* distortion limits of clause 2.4.2 apply to each phase and are not to be exceeded by a *User* injecting harmonic currents at any of its *connection points*.
- (b) Any induced noise interference to telecommunications lines by a *User's load* due to harmonic currents is not acceptable and the *User* is required to reduce the level of harmonic currents so as to contain such interference to limits considered acceptable by the telecommunication *Network Operator*.
- (c) The *User's load* shall not cause any harmonic resonance in other *Users'* systems or the *Network Operator's network*.

2.4.2.5 Direct current

- (a) *Users' plant* and equipment shall comply with the requirements on direct current components as stipulated in clause 3.12 of *Australian Standard AS/NZS 3100:2009*. In particular, the direct current in the neutral caused by the *Users' plant* and equipment shall not exceed 120mA.h per *day*.
- (b) *Users* shall ensure that all their *plant* and equipment is designed to withstand without damage or reduction in life expectancy the limits as specified in this clause 2.4.2.5.
- (c) Responsibility of the *Network Operator* for direct current in the neutral outside the limits specified in this clause 2.4.2.5 shall be limited to direct current in the neutral caused by *network assets*.
- (d) A *User* whose *plant* is identified by the *Network Operator* as not performing to the standards specified in this clause 2.4.2.5 shall take such measures as may be necessary to meet *Australian Standard AS/NZS 3100:2009*.

2.4.3 Voltage Unbalance

- (a) For normal system operation and for planned system *outages*, the average *voltage* unbalance measured over a half hour at a *connection point* should not exceed the amount shown in Table 4.

Table 4 - Voltage unbalance limits

Nominal <i>supply voltage</i>	Maximum negative sequence <i>voltage</i> (% of nominal <i>voltage</i>)
132 kV	1.0
11-66 kV	1.5
<i>Low voltage</i>	2.0
An increase in the negative phase sequence <i>voltage</i> of up to 50% of the above is permissible for an aggregate of up to 5 minutes in any 30-minute period.	

2.5 Electromagnetic interference

Electromagnetic interference caused by equipment forming part of the *transmission* and *network* shall not exceed the limits set out in Tables 1 and 2 of *Australian Standard AS2344 (1997)*.

2.6 Stability

2.6.1 Transient rotor angle stability

All *Generation Units* connected to the *transmission* system and *Generation Units* within *power stations* that are connected to the *network* and that are classified as *large generators* shall remain in synchronism following a *credible contingency event*.

2.6.2 Dynamic stability

System oscillations originating from system electromechanical characteristics, electromagnetic effect or non-linearity of system components, and triggered by any small disturbance or large disturbance in the *power system*, shall remain within the small disturbance rotor angle stability criteria and the *power system* shall return to a stable operating state following the disturbance. The small disturbance rotor angle stability criteria are set out below.

- (a) All electromechanical oscillations resulting from any small or large disturbance in the *power system* shall be well damped and the *power system* shall return to a stable operating state.
- (b) The damping ratio of electromechanical oscillations shall be at least 0.1.
- (c) For electromechanical oscillations as a result of a small disturbance, the damping ratio of the oscillation shall be at least 0.5.
- (d) In addition to the requirements of clauses 2.6.2(a) and 2.6.2(b), the halving *time* of any electromechanical oscillations shall not exceed 5 seconds.

- (e) If oscillations do not comply with clause 2.6.2(d), then appropriate measures shall be taken to *change* the *power system* configuration and/or *Generation dispatch* so as to eliminate such oscillations. Such measures shall be taken by automatic means.
- (f) *Users* who may cause subsynchronous or supersynchronous resonance oscillations shall provide appropriate measures at the planning and design stage to prevent the introduction of this problem to the *Network Operator's power system* or other *Users' systems*.

2.6.3 Short term *voltage* stability

- (a) Short term *voltage* stability is concerned with the *power system* surviving an initial disturbance and reaching a satisfactory new steady state.
- (b) Stable *voltage control* shall be maintained following the most severe *credible contingency event*.

2.7 Contingency criteria for the *network*

To a great extent, the contingency criteria used for the design of the *network* will determine the inherent *reliability* of *customer supply*. These criteria apply to the shared *network*, and not to *customer connections*.

- (a) The contingency levels to which the *network* and sub-clauses of the *network* are designed are set out in clause 14 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.
- (b) The contingency criteria in this clause 2.7 apply only to the *electricity networks* and not to *customer connections* to the *network*.
- (c) The contingency criteria for a sub-clause of the *network* may be varied by *Power and Water* following a risk/benefit analysis and other considerations such as capital investment priorities, social needs, the environment and land use.
- (d) Connection assets will be designed in accordance with a *User's* requirements and a *network User* may choose a design configuration having a greater or lesser level of security for its dedicated *connection* to the shared *network*, subject to the approval of *Power and Water*.
- (e) The contingency criteria to which the *network* has been designed shall be taken into account when assessing the impact of a *User's* installation on other *Users*, or the *power system*.

2.8 Equipment fault level ratings

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall specify the minimum fault level ratings of equipment *connected* to the *network*.
- (b) Unless otherwise agreed by the *Network Operator*, the equipment fault level ratings specified in clause 15.4 of the *Network Planning Criteria* shall apply.

2.9 Protection arrangements

2.9.1 Users' obligation to provide adequate protection

2.9.1.1 Safety of people

It is the *User's* responsibility to provide adequate *protection* (at the *User's* discretion) of all *User* owned *plant* to ensure the safety of the public and personnel, and to minimise damage.

2.9.1.2 System reliability and integrity

- (a) The *Network Operator* and *Users* shall ensure that any new equipment *connected* to any part of the system is protected in accordance with the requirements of clause 2.9.
- (b) Where the *connection* of new equipment would affect *critical fault clearance times*, the *protection* of both new and existing equipment throughout the *power system* shall meet the new *critical fault clearance times*.
- (c) Where existing *protection* would not meet the new *critical fault clearance times*, that *protection* shall be upgraded.
- (d) *Fault clearance time* requirements may not be established until all new *plant* data is available and the detailed design of a *User's connection* or *network* reinforcement has commenced.
- (e) All faults of any type shall be cleared within the times specified in clause 2.9.5 unless it can be established by the *Network Operator* that a longer clearance *time* would not result in the *network* failing to meet the performance standards set out in clause 2.

2.9.1.3 Minimum standard of protection equipment

Protection systems shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with *good electricity industry practice*. In particular, the *Network Operator* shall ensure that all new *protection apparatus* including that installed on *User's* equipment complies with IEC Standard 60255 and that all new *current transformers* and *voltage transformers* comply with *Australian Standard AS 60044.1 (2007)* and *Australian Standard AS 60044.2 (2007)*.

2.9.1.4 General requirements

- (a) All *primary equipment* on the *network* shall be protected so that if an equipment fault occurs, the faulted equipment item is automatically removed from service by the operation of circuit breakers or fuses.
- (b) *Protection systems* shall be designed and their settings coordinated so that, if there is a fault, unnecessary equipment damage is avoided and any reduction in *power transfer capability* or in the level of service provided to *Users* is minimised.

- (c) Consistent with the requirement of clause 2.9.1.4(b), *protection systems* shall remove faulted equipment from service in a timely manner and ensure that, where practical, those parts of the *network* not directly affected by a fault remain in service.

2.9.2 Duplication of *protection*

To implement a “one out of two” arrangement, complete *secondary equipment* redundancy is required. This includes *CT* and *VT* secondaries, auxiliary supplies, cabling and wiring, circuit breaker trip coils and batteries and intertripping arrangements.

2.9.2.1 Equipment connected at voltages of 66 kV and above

- (a) *Primary equipment* shall be protected by a main *protection system* that shall remove from service only those items of *primary equipment* directly affected by a fault.
- (b) The main *protection system* shall comprise *two fully independent protection schemes of differing principle*, connected to operate in a “one out of two” arrangement.
- (c) One of the independent *protection schemes* shall include earth fault *protection*.
- (d) To maintain the integrity of the two *protection schemes*, no electrical cross *connections* shall be made between them.
- (e) It shall be possible to test and maintain either *protection scheme* independently without affecting the other.
- (f) Where both *protection schemes* require end-to-end communications, independent *teleprotection signalling* equipment and communication channels shall be provided.
- (g) Where failure of the *teleprotection signalling* would result in the failure of both *protection schemes* to meet the requirements of this clause 2.9.2.1 independent communication bearers shall be provided.
- (h) *Primary equipment* shall also be protected by a back-up *protection system* in addition to the main *protection system*. The back-up *protection system* shall isolate the faulted *primary equipment* if a circuit breaker fails to operate.
- (i) The design of the main *protection system* shall make it possible to test and maintain either *protection scheme* without interfering with the other.

2.9.2.2 Equipment connected at voltages of less than 66 kV

- (a) Each item of *primary equipment* shall be protected by two independent *protection systems*.
- (b) One of the independent *protection systems* shall be a main *protection system* that shall remove from service only the faulted item of *primary equipment*.

- (c) At least one of the *protection schemes* shall include earth fault *protection* so as to give additional coverage for low level earth faults and to provide some remote backup.
- (d) The other independent *protection system* may be a back-up *protection system*.
- (e) Notwithstanding the requirements of clause 2.9.2.2(a), where a part of the *distribution system* may potentially form a separate island the *protection system* that provides *protection* against islanding shall comprise *two fully independent protection schemes of differing principle*.
- (f) Where appropriate, and with the approval of the *Network Operator*, a single set of high rupturing capacity (HRC) fuses may be used as a *protection scheme* for *plant* at 33 kV and below, in which case a second *protection scheme* would not be required to satisfy the requirements of this clause 2.9.2.2.

2.9.3 Availability of *protection systems*

All *protection schemes* on the *network*, including any back-up or *circuit breaker failure protection scheme* and associated intertripping, shall be kept operational at all times except when maintenance is required.

2.9.4 Maximum total fault clearance times

- (a) This clause 2.9.4 applies to short circuit faults of any type on *primary equipment* at nominal system *voltage*. Where *critical fault clearance times* exist, these times may be lower and take precedence over the times stated in this clause 2.9.4. *Critical fault clearance time* requirements are set out in clause 2.9.5.
- (b) For *primary equipment* operating at *transmission system voltages* of 132 kV and 66 kV the maximum total fault clearance times in Table 5 apply to the nominal *voltage* of the circuit breaker that clears a particular fault for both minimum and maximum *system* conditions. For *primary equipment* operating at *distribution system voltages* of 33 kV and below the maximum total fault clearance times specified in Table 6 may be applied to all circuit breakers required to clear a fault for maximum *system* conditions, irrespective of the nominal *voltage* of the circuit breaker.
- (c) For *primary equipment* operating at 132 kV and 66 kV:
 - (1) Both of the *protection schemes* of the main protection system must operate to achieve a total fault clearance time no greater than the “No CB Fail” time given in Table 5. The backup protection system must achieve a total fault clearance time no greater than the “CB Fail” time in Table 5, except that the second protection scheme that protects against small zone faults must achieve a total fault clearance time no greater than 400 msec;
 - (2) For a small zone fault coupled with a circuit breaker failure, maximum total fault clearance times are not defined.

- (3) In Table 5, for voltages of 66 kV and above, the term “local” refers to the circuit breaker(s) of a protection system where the fault is located:
- (i) within the same *substation* as the circuit breaker;
 - (ii) for a transmission line between two *substations*, at or within 50% of the line impedance nearest to the *substation* containing the circuit breaker, provided that the line is terminated at that *substation*; or
 - (iii) for a transmission line between more than two *substations*, on the same line section as the *substation* containing the circuit breaker, provided that the line is terminated at that *substation*.
- (4) In Table 5, for voltages of 66 kV and above, the term “remote” refers to all circuit breakers required to clear a fault, apart from those specified in clause 2.9.4(c)(3).
- (d) In Table 6, for *primary equipment* operating at nominal voltage of 33 kV and below, the term “local” refers only to faults located within the *substation* in which a circuit breaker is located.

Table 5 – 132 kV and 66 kV maximum total fault clearance times (msec)

		No CB Fail	CB Fail
132 kV and 66 kV	Local	150	400
	Remote	200	450

Table 6 – 33 kV and below maximum total fault clearance times (msec)

		No CB Fail	CB Fail
33 kV and below	Local	1160	1500
	Remote	Not defined	Not defined

2.9.5 Critical fault clearance times

One of the major factors affecting the transient stability of the *network* is the *fault clearance time*. The *critical fault clearance time* is the longest *time* that a fault can be allowed to remain on the *power system* to ensure that transient instability does not occur. *Critical fault clearance times* are established for the various fault types at key locations. *Protection* then shall be set to ensure that the *critical fault clearance times* are achieved.

2.9.5.1 Critical fault clearance times

Where a *critical fault clearance time* to preserve system stability has been established by the *Network Operator* in a portion of the *network*:

- (a) For *plant* operating at *voltages* of 66 kV or higher, each of the two independent *protection schemes* shall be capable of detecting and clearing *plant faults* within the *critical fault clearance time*.

- (b) Where a *critical fault clearance time* exists for *plant* operating at 33 kV and below:
 - (1) one *protection scheme* shall be capable of detecting and clearing *plant* faults within the *critical fault clearance time*; and
 - (2) the second *protection scheme* is required to meet the maximum acceptable *fault clearance times* set out in clause (c).
- (c) Other *critical fault clearance time* requirements may be imposed by the *Network Operator* to limit system *voltage* and/or *frequency* disturbances resulting from faults.

2.9.6 Protection sensitivity

- (a) Protection schemes must be sufficiently sensitive to detect fault currents in the *primary equipment* taken into account the errors in protection apparatus and *primary equipment* parameters under the system conditions in this clause 2.9.6.
- (b) For minimum and maximum system conditions, all protection schemes must detect and discriminate all *primary equipment* faults within their intended normal operating zones.
- (c) For abnormal equipment conditions involving two *primary equipment* outages, all *primary equipment* faults must be detected by one protection scheme and cleared by a protection system. Backup protection systems may be relied on for this purpose. Fault clearance times are not defined under these conditions.

2.9.7 Trip supply supervision

Where loss of power supply to its secondary circuits would result in protection scheme performance being reduced, all protection scheme secondary circuits must have trip supply supervision.

2.9.8 Trip circuit supervision

All protection scheme secondary circuits that include a circuit breaker trip coil must have trip circuit supervision, which monitor the health of the trip coil under both circuit breaker opened and closed positions.

2.9.9 Protection flagging, indication, fault and event records

All protective devices supplied to satisfy the protection requirements must contain such indicating, flagging, fault and event recording as is sufficient to enable the determination, after the fact, of which devices caused a particular trip.

Any failure of the tripping supplies, protection apparatus and circuit breaker trip oils must be alarmed and operating procedures must be put in place to ensure that prompt action is taken to remedy such failures.

2.10 Variation of service quality parameters

- (a) In particular circumstances, the requirements in clause 2 of this *Code* may be varied.
- (b) The *Network Operator* may vary the *Code* in accordance with the *derogation* provisions of clause 12.
- (c) Where it is intended to vary the requirements set out in this *Code*, it shall be demonstrated that the variation will not adversely affect *Users* or *power system security*.

3 Technical requirements for equipment *connected to the network*

3.1 Introduction

- (a) The objective of this clause 3 is to facilitate maintenance of the *power system* service quality parameters specified in clause 2, so that other *Users* are not adversely affected and that personnel and equipment safety are not put at risk.
- (b) This clause sets out details of the technical requirements which *Users* shall satisfy as a condition of *connection* of any equipment to the *network* including, but not limited, to the following types of equipment:
 - (1) *Generation Units connected at all voltage levels of the network*;
 - (2) *Small Generation Units connected at voltages of 22 kV and below*;
 - (3) *Small Inverter Energy Systems connected to the low voltage network*; and
 - (4) *Loads, including those with electronic switching systems, connected at all voltage levels of the network*.
- (c) The *Network Operator* shall determine the classification of equipment to be connected to the *network* and may alter the technical requirements of connection in this clause 3 in respect of a particular *connection* only as much as is necessary to ensure the *power system* service quality parameters specified in clause 2 are maintained.
- (d) An exemption may be granted by the *Network Operator* to certain provisions in clause 3 in accordance with the *derogations* in clause 12 of the *Code*.

3.2 Requirements for all *network Users*

3.2.1 *Network performance standards*

A *User* shall ensure that each of its facilities *connected to the network* is capable of operation while the *power system* is operating within the parameters of the performance standards set out in clause 1.7.2.

3.2.1.1 *Voltage fluctuations*

A *User* shall maintain its contributions to flicker at the *connection point* to below the limits allocated by the *Network Operator* under clause 2.4.1.

3.2.1.2 *Harmonic voltage distortion*

- (a) A *User* shall comply with any harmonic emission limits allocated by the *Network Operator* in accordance with clause 2.4.2 of the *Code*.
- (b) A *User* shall ensure that the injection of harmonics or interharmonics from its equipment or facilities into the *network* does not cause the maximum system harmonic *voltage* levels at the point of *connection* to exceed the levels set out in clause 17.2 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

3.2.1.3 Direct current injection

A *User* shall ensure that any DC component of current produced by its own equipment complies with the requirements of clause 17.2.2 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

3.2.1.4 Voltage unbalance

A *User connected* to all three phases shall balance the current drawn in each phase at its *connection point* so as to achieve levels of negative sequence *voltage* at all *connection points* that are equal to or less than the values specified in clause 2.4.3.

3.2.1.5 Stability

- (a) *Users* shall cooperate with the *Network Operator* to achieve stable operation of the *networks* and shall install emergency controls as reasonably required by the *Network Operator*.
- (b) The cost of installation, maintenance and operation of the emergency controls shall be borne by the *User*.
- (c) The stability criteria stated in clause 2.6 shall be satisfied under the worst credible system *load* and *Generation* pattern, and the most severe *credible contingency event* arising from either a single *credible contingency event* at up to 100% *peak load* or a double *credible contingency event* at up to 80% *peak load*.
- (d) *Credible contingency events* shall be considered in accordance with clause 2.7.

3.2.1.6 Electromagnetic interference

A *User* shall ensure that the electromagnetic interference caused by its equipment does not exceed the limits set out in clause 2.5.

3.2.1.7 Fault levels

- (a) A *User connected* to the *network* may not install or *connect* equipment at the *connection point* that is rated for a *maximum fault current* lower than that specified in the *Access Agreement* in accordance with clause 3.6.6.
- (b) A *User connected* to the *network* shall not install equipment at the *connection point* that is rated for a *maximum fault current* lower than that specified in clause 15.4 of the *Network Planning Criteria* unless a lower *maximum fault current* is agreed with the *Network Operator* and specified in the *Access Agreement*.
- (c) Where a *User's* equipment increases the fault levels in the *transmission* system, responsibility for the cost of any upgrades to the equipment required as a result of the *changed power system* conditions will be dealt with by commercial arrangements between the *Network Operator* and the *Users*.

3.2.1.8 Main switch

Except as provided in clause 3.3.2.11, a *User* shall be able to de-energise its own equipment without reliance on the *Network Operator*.

3.2.1.9 Users' power quality monitoring equipment

- (a) The *Network Operator* may require a *User* to provide accommodation and connections for the *Network Operator's* power quality monitoring and recording equipment within the *User's* facilities or at the *connection point*. In such an event the *User* shall meet the requirements of the *Network Operator* in respect of the installation of the equipment and shall provide access for reading, operating and maintaining this equipment.
- (b) The key inputs that the *Network Operator* may require a *User* to provide to the *Network Operator's* power quality monitoring and recording equipment include:
 - (1) three phase *voltage* and three phase current and, where applicable, neutral *voltage* and current; and
 - (2) digital inputs for circuit breaker status and *protection* operate alarms hardwired directly from the appropriate devices. If direct hardwiring is not possible and if the *Network Operator* agrees, then the *User* may provide inputs measurable to 1 millisecond resolution and GPS synchronised.

3.2.1.10 Power system simulation studies

- (a) A *User* shall provide to the *Network Operator* such of the following information relating to any of the *User's* facilities *connected* or intended to be *connected* to the *transmission* system as is required to enable the undertaking of *power system* simulation studies:
 - (1) a set of functional block diagrams, including all transfer functions between feedback signals and *Generation Unit* output;
 - (2) the parameters of each functional block, including all settings, gains, *time constraints*, delays, dead bands and limits; and
 - (3) the characteristics of non-linear elements.
- (b) The *Network Operator* may provide any information it so receives to any *User* who intends to *connect* any equipment to the *transmission* system for the purposes of enabling that *User* to undertake any *power system* simulation studies it wishes to undertake, subject to that *User* entering into a confidentiality agreement with the *Network Operator*, to apply for the benefit of the *Network Operator* and any *User* whose information is so provided, in such form as the *Network Operator* may require.

3.2.1.11 Technical matters to be coordinated

- (a) The *User* and the *Network Operator* shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree upon the following matters in respect of each new or altered *connection*:
- (1) design at *connection point*;
 - (2) physical layout adjacent to *connection point*;
 - (3) *protection* and backup;
 - (4) control characteristics;
 - (5) communications, metered quantities and alarms;
 - (6) insulation co-ordination and lightning *protection*;
 - (7) fault levels and fault clearing times;
 - (8) switching and isolation facilities;
 - (9) interlocking arrangements;
 - (10) *metering* installations as described in clause 10;
 - (11) *synchronising* facilities;
 - (12) *under frequency load shedding* and islanding schemes;
 - (13) out of step/pole slip *facility*; and
 - (14) any special test requirements.
- (b) Prior to *connection* to the *Network Operator's* power system, the *Users* shall have provided to the *Network Operator* a signed statement to certify that the equipment to be *connected* has been designed and installed in accordance with this *Code*, all relevant standards, all statutory requirements and *good electricity industry practice*.

3.2.2 **Provision of information**

- (a) A *User* shall provide all data reasonably required by the *Network Operator*.
- (b) Details of the kinds of data that may be required are included in clause 11 and Attachment 3 of this *Code*.

3.2.3 **Protection requirements**

Protection shall be provided to detect and clear faults, without system instability and without causing equipment damage, in accordance with clauses 2.6 and 2.9.

3.2.3.1 Transmission lines and other Plant operated at 66 kV and above

- (a) *Protection* shall be by two fully independent *protection schemes* as set out in clause 2.9.2.1.
- (b) The *protection* arrangements shall be capable of clearing a fault within the clearance times set out in clause 2.9.5.

3.2.3.2 Interconnectors and ties operated at 33 kV and below

- (a) *Protection* shall be by two fully independent *protection schemes* as set out in clause 2.9.2.2.
- (b) The *protection* arrangements shall be capable of clearing a fault within the clearance times set out in clause 2.9.5.

3.2.3.3 Feeders, reactors, capacitors and other plant operated at 33 kV and below

- (a) The *protection* arrangements shall be capable of clearing a fault within the clearance times set out in clause 2.9.5.
- (b) Where a *critical fault clearance time* exists, *protection* of these items will be by two independent *protection schemes of differing principle*, each one discriminating with the *Network Operator power system* and capable of meeting the *critical fault clearance time*.
- (c) At least one of these *protection schemes* shall also include earth fault *protection* so as to give additional coverage for low level earth faults and to provide some remote backup.
- (d) Where there is no *critical fault clearance time*, the following shall be the minimum *protection* requirement:
 - (1) three Phase Inverse Definite Minimum *Time* Overcurrent; and
 - (2) three Phase Instantaneous Overcurrent; and
 - (3) inverse Definite Minimum *Time* Earth Fault; and
 - (4) instantaneous Earth Fault.
- (e) With the approval of the *Network Operator*, a single set of HRC fuses may be deemed to provide equivalent *protection* to subclause (c) of this clause 3.2.3.3.

3.2.3.4 Transformers

The composition of each of the two *protection schemes* should be *complementary* such that, in combination, they provide dependable clearance of *transformer* faults within a specified *time*. With any single failure to operate of the *secondary plant*, fault clearance shall still be achieved by *transformer protection*, but may be delayed until the nature of the fault *changes* or evolves.

Protection of transformers larger than 3 MVA will require at least one of the *protection schemes* to be a unit *protection* and provide high-speed fault clearance of *transformer* faults.

- (a) For *transformers* with a primary *voltage* of 66 kV and above, *protection* shall be by two fully independent *protection schemes* as set out in clause 2.9.2.1.

- (b) For *transformers* with a primary voltage of 33 kV and below, *protection* shall be by two *protection schemes* which are *complementary*, as set out in clause 2.9.2.2.
- (c) The *protection* arrangements shall be capable of clearing a fault within the clearance times set out in clause 2.9.5.

3.2.3.5 Protection discrimination

Where the *Network Operator protection* is overcurrent, the maximum operate *time* will be 1 second at maximum fault level. Generally, *Network Operator* overcurrent and earth fault *protection* employs devices with standard inverse characteristics to BS142 with a 3 second curve at 10 times current and *time* multiplier of 1.0. Note that this is the specification of the characteristic rather than the device setting. Operating times for other types of *protection* will generally be lower and will be dependent upon location.

The *protection* in clauses 3.2.3.1, 3.2.3.2, 3.2.3.3 and 3.2.3.4 is required to discriminate with the *Network Operator's protection* on the *power system*.

3.2.3.6 Backup protection

- (a) The *protection* in clauses 3.2.3.1, 3.2.3.2, 3.2.3.3 and 3.2.3.4 is required to be backed up by an independent *protection* to ensure clearance of faults with a *protection* failure.
- (b) *Backup protection* shall be provided to detect and clear faults involving small zones.
- (c) *Protection* shall be provided to detect and clear faults involving *circuit breaker failure*.
- (d) Where *critical fault clearance times* do not exist, or are greater than the times given in clause 2.9.5, the clearance times are to be as specified by the *Network Operator* in an *Access Agreement*.
- (e) Such *protection schemes* shall be capable of detecting and initiating clearance of uncleared or *small zone faults* under both normal and *minimum system conditions*.
- (f) Under abnormal *plant* conditions, all primary system faults shall be detected and cleared by at least one *protection scheme* on the *User's* equipment. *Remote backup protection* or *standby protection* may be used for this purpose.

3.2.3.7 Protection alarm requirements

- (a) Specific requirements and the interface point to which alarms shall be provided will be mutually decided during the detailed design phase. These alarms will be brought back to the *Network Operator's control centre* via the installed *SCADA system* supplied by the *User* in accordance with clause 3.2.5 or clause 3.3.3, as applicable.

- (b) In addition, any failure of the *User's* tripping supplies, *protection apparatus* and circuit breaker trip coils shall be alarmed within the *User's* installation and operating procedures put in place to ensure that prompt action is taken to remedy such failures.

3.2.3.8 Islanding of a *User's* facilities from the *power system*

- (a) Unless otherwise agreed by the *Network Operator*, a *User* shall ensure that islanding of its *Generation plant* together with part of the *Network Operator power system*, cannot occur upon loss of *supply* from the *Network Operator's power system*.
- (b) Clause 3.2.3.8(a) should not preclude a design that allows a *User* to island its own *Generation* and *plant load*, thereby maintaining *supply* to that *plant*, upon loss of *supply* from the *Network Operator's power system*.
- (c) Islanding shall only occur in situations where *Power and Water's power system* is unlikely to recover from a major disturbance.
- (d) Unless otherwise agreed by the *Network Operator*, the *User* shall provide facilities to initiate islanding in the event of their system drawing more than the agreed MW/MVAr demands from the *Network Operator power system* for a specified *time*.
- (e) *Users* shall co-operate to agree with the *Network Operator* the type of initiating signal and settings to ensure compatibility with other *protection* settings on the *network* and to ensure compliance with the requirements of clause 2.2.
- (f) Where a *User* does not wish to meet the requirements of clause 2.2, appropriate commercial arrangements will be required between the *User*, the *Network Operator* and/or another *User(s)* to account for the higher level of access service.

3.2.3.9 Automatic reclose equipment

The installation and use of *automatic reclose equipment* in a *User's facility* and in the *power system* shall only be permitted with the prior written agreement of *Network Operator*.

3.2.3.10 Maintenance of *protection*

- (a) *Users* shall regularly maintain their *protection systems* at intervals of not more than 3 years. Records shall be kept of such maintenance and the *Network Operator* may review these. Refer also to clause 5.2.
- (b) Each scheduled routine test, or any unscheduled tests that become necessary, shall include both a calibration check and an actual trip operation of the associated circuit breaker.

- (c) All maintenance and testing of *User* owned *protection* shall be carried out by personnel suitably qualified and experienced in the commissioning, testing and maintenance of *primary plant* and *secondary plant* and equipment.

3.2.4 Design requirements for *Users' substations*

The following requirements apply to the design, station layout and choice of equipment for a *substation*.

- (a) Safety provisions shall comply with requirements applicable and notified by the *Network Operator*.
- (b) Where required by the *Network Operator* appropriate interfaces and accommodation shall be incorporated by the *Users* for *metering*, communication facilities, remote monitoring and *protection* of *plant* that is to be installed in the *substation* by the *Network Operator*.
- (c) A *substation* shall be capable of continuous uninterrupted operation with the levels of *voltage*, harmonics, unbalance and *voltage* fluctuation from all sources as defined in clause 2 of this *Code*.
- (d) Earthing of *primary plant* in the *substation* shall be in accordance with the Electricity Supply Association of Australia Substation Earthing Guide, and shall reduce step and touch potentials to safe levels.
- (e) *Synchronisation* facilities or reclose blocking shall be provided if *Generating Units* are *connected* through the *substation*.
- (f) Secure electricity supplies of adequate capacity to provide for the operation for at least eight hours of *plant* performing *metering*, communication, monitoring, and *protection* functions, on loss of AC supplies, shall be provided.
- (g) *Plant* shall be tested to ensure that the *substation* complies with the design and specifications required by clause 3.2.3.10. Where appropriate, type test certificates provided by the manufacturer satisfy this clause.
- (h) The *protection* equipment required would normally include *protection schemes* for individual items of *plant*, back-up arrangements, auxiliary DC supplies and instrumentation *transformers*.
- (i) Insulation levels of *plant* in the *substation* shall co-ordinate with the insulation levels of the *network* to which the *substation* is *connected* without degrading the design performance of the *network*.
- (j) Prior to *connection* to the *Network Operator's power system*, the *User* shall have provided to the *Network Operator* a signed written statement to certify that the equipment to be *connected* has been designed and installed in accordance with:
 - (1) this *Code*;
 - (2) all relevant standards;
 - (3) all statutory requirements; and

(4) *good electricity industry practice.*

The statement shall have been certified by a Chartered Professional Engineer with NPER-3 standing with the Institution of Engineers, Australia, unless otherwise agreed.

3.2.5 Remote monitoring and control requirements

- (a) The *Network Operator* may require the *User* to:
 - (1) provide *remote monitoring equipment (RME)* to enable the *Network Operator* to remotely monitor status and indications of the *load* facilities where this is reasonably necessary in real *time* for control, planning or security of the *power system*; and
 - (2) upgrade, modify or replace any *RME* already installed in a *power station* provided that the existing *RME* is, in the reasonable opinion of the *Network Operator*, no longer fit for purpose and notice is given in writing to the relevant *User*.
- (b) The *RME* provided, upgraded, modified or replaced (as applicable) under subclause (a) shall conform to an acceptable standard as agreed by the *Network Operator* and shall be compatible with the *Network Operator's SCADA system*, including the requirements of clause 4.9 of this *Code*.
- (c) Input information to *RME* may include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - (1) Status Indications
 - (i) relevant circuit breakers open/closed (double pole) within the *plant*
 - (ii) relevant isolators within the *plant*
 - (iii) *connection* to the *network*
 - (2) Alarms
 - (i) *protection* fail
 - (ii) battery fail - AC and DC
 - (iii) *Trip circuit supervision*
 - (iv) *Trip supply supervision*
 - (3) Measured Values
 - (i) *active power load*
 - (ii) *reactive power load*
 - (iii) *load current*
 - (iv) relevant *voltages* throughout the *plant*
 - (4) Sequence-of-event (SOE) points
 - (i) *protection* operation

- (ii) circuit breaker status
- (5) Such other input information reasonably required by the *Network Operator*.

3.2.6 Communications equipment

- (a) A *User* shall provide electricity supplies for any *RME* installed in relation to its *plant* capable of keeping these facilities available for at least eight hours following total loss of *supply* at the *connection point* for the relevant *plant*.
- (b) A *User* shall provide communications paths (with appropriate redundancy) between any *RME* installed at its *plant* to a communications interface at the relevant *plant* and in a location reasonably acceptable to the *Network Operator*.
- (c) Communications systems between this communications interface and the relevant *control centre* shall be the responsibility of the *Network Operator* unless otherwise agreed.
- (d) The cost of the communications systems shall be met by the *User*, unless otherwise determined by the *Network Operator*.

3.2.7 Secure electricity supplies

Secure electricity supplies of adequate capacity to provide for the operation for at least eight hours of *plant* performing *metering*, communication, monitoring, and *protection* functions, on loss of AC supplies, shall be provided by a *User*.

3.2.8 Load shedding facilities

If reasonably required by the *Network Operator*, *Users* are to provide automatic *interruptible load* to the *Network Operator* in accordance with clause 2.2.2.

3.2.8.1 Load to be available for disconnection

- (a) It is a requirement for *power system security* that 75% of the *power system load* at any *time* be available for *disconnection*:
 - (1) under the automatic control of *under frequency* relays; and
 - (2) under manual or automatic control from *control centres*; and/or
 - (3) under the automatic control of *under voltage* relays.
- (b) In some circumstances, it may be necessary to have up to 90% of the *power system load*, or up to 90% of the *load* within a specific part of the *network*, available for automatic *disconnection*. The *Network Operator* will advise *Users* if this additional requirement is necessary.
- (c) Special *load shedding* arrangements may be required to be installed to cater for abnormal operating conditions.

- (d) Subject to clauses 4.3.4(c) and 4.3.4(d), arrangements for *load shedding* shall be agreed between the *Network Operator* and *User* and can include the opening of circuits in a *network*.
- (e) The *Network Operator* shall specify, in the *Access Agreement*, control and monitoring requirements to be provided by a *User* for *load shedding* facilities.

3.2.8.2 Installation and testing of *load shedding* facilities

Users shall, if reasonably required by the *Network Operator*:

- (a) Provide, install, operate and maintain facilities for *load shedding* in respect of any *connection point*.
- (b) Co-operate with the *Network Operator* in conducting periodic functional testing of the facilities, which shall not require *load* to be *disconnected*, provided facilities are available to test the scheme without shedding *load*.
- (c) Apply *under frequency* settings to relays as determined by the *Power System Controller*.
- (d) Apply *under voltage* settings to relays as determined by the *Network Operator*.

3.2.9 **Impact on *power system* performance**

- (a) Prior to a *User's* facilities being *connected* to the *power system*, the impact on *power system* performance due to the *Users'* facilities is to be determined by *power system* simulation studies as specified by the *Network Operator*.
- (b) These studies may be performed by the *User* or a third party, in which case, the *Network Operator* will require full details of the studies performed including, without limitation:
 - (1) assumptions made;
 - (2) results;
 - (3) conclusions; and
 - (4) recommendations.
- (c) The acceptance of studies performed by a *User* or a third party will be entirely at the *Network Operator's* discretion.
- (d) Acceptance of *power system* studies by the *Network Operator* does not absolve *Users* of responsibility/liability for damages or losses incurred by others.
- (e) The *Network Operator* reserves the right to perform its own studies (at the *User's* cost) and will provide details of such studies to the *User*.
- (f) The *Network Operator* will make the final determination on the suitability of a *User's* facilities and the requirements to be fulfilled prior to and after the facilities are *connected*, in accordance with this *Code*.

3.2.10 Safety criteria

- (a) As part of the planning process the safety risk should be considered for any new developments and existing facilities which may have a significant impact on safety. The safety risk is to be assessed in the planning process. Relevant bodies should be informed, consulted and steps taken to ensure safety is maintained to industry standards.
- (b) The ESAA National Electricity Network Safety (NENS) Code shall be applied and reference shall be made to the NENS Reference Guidelines.

3.2.11 Environmental criteria

- (a) Environmental management of the *transmission* and *distribution networks* will be in keeping with the ESAA Code of Environmental practice. This applies in planning, construction, operation and *decommissioning*.
- (b) *Users* shall inform and consult with relevant public bodies, community interest groups and the general public, and shall avoid where economically possible the use of land where conflicting uses or potential conflicting uses exist.

3.2.12 Construction criteria

3.2.12.1 Overhead lines

Overhead lines and cable systems shall be designed and constructed to *Australian Standard HB C(b)1, "Guidelines for Design and Maintenance of Overhead Distribution and Transmission lines"*.

3.2.12.2 Underground cables

Cables shall be installed in a manner that takes into account the local environmental and service conditions, the location of other utilities' services and the risk of damage from excavation. Installation practices shall be in accordance with ESAA Code C(b)2, "Guide to the Installation of Cables Underground".

3.3 Requirements for *connection of Generators*

- (a) The *Network Operator* will carry out detailed *power system* studies to determine performance requirements to be expected from a proposed new *Generation Unit* or modification to an existing *Generation Unit*.
- (b) All costs associated with these studies, including studies to obtain any necessary optimal settings for the *Generation Unit* and its controls shall be borne by the *User*.
- (c) The *User* shall be responsible for all costs associated with the installation, performance verification, parameter tuning and model validation of any additional equipment identified in the studies.
- (d) *Users* will be responsible for ensuring that *plant* capabilities and ratings are monitored on an ongoing basis to ensure continued suitability as conditions

on the *power system change* in the future (eg. increasing fault levels as additional *plant* is connected to the *power system*).

- (e) A *User* will be responsible for the cost of any *plant* upgrades required at its facilities as a result of changing *power system* conditions.
- (f) If, after installation of a *User's* facilities, it is found that the installation is adversely affecting the security or *reliability* of the *power system*, the *quality of supply*, or the installation does not comply with the *Code* or the relevant *Access Agreement*, the *User* shall be responsible for remedying the problem at its cost.

3.3.1 **Protection requirements**

- (a) *Protection* of a *Generator* shall generally be at the discretion of the *User*, but shall be sufficient to protect the *Generator* from faults on the *Network Operator power system*.
- (b) *Protection* of a *Generator* will be by two fully independent protection schemes of differing principle, each one discriminating with the protection schemes used on the *Network Operator power system*.
- (c) Where a *critical fault clearance time* exists, each *protection* shall be capable of meeting the *critical fault clearance time*.
- (d) *Generator protection schemes* are to meet the *fault clearance times* specified in clause 2.9.5.
- (e) In addition, the *User* shall provide *protection* and controls to achieve, even under circuit breaker fail conditions, the following functions:
 - (1) Separation of the *User's Generation Plant* from the *Network Operator power system* in the event of any of the above *protection schemes* operating.
 - (2) Separation of the *User's Generation Plant* from the *Network Operator power system* in the event of loss of *supply* to the *User's* installation from the *Network Operator's power system*.
 - (3) Prevention of the *User's Generation Plant* from energising de-energised *Network Operator plant*, or energising and *supplying* an otherwise isolated portion of the *Network Operator's power system*.
 - (4) Adequate *protection* of the *User's* equipment and complete installation without reliance on back up from the *Network Operator's protection*.

3.3.1.1 Check synchronising

- (a) Check *synchronising* interlocks shall include a feature such that circuit breaker closure via the check synchronism interlock is not possible if the permissive closing contact is closed prior to the circuit breaker close signal being *generated*. Such a feature is intended to protect the check synchronism

interlock permissive contact from damage and to ensure out of synchronism closure cannot occur if the contact is welded closed.

- (b) Distinction should be drawn between check *synchronising* interlocks and *synchronising* facilities (refer to clause 3.3.5).
- (c) The check *synchronising* interlocks may be installed on circuit breakers within the *Network Operator's power system* where the risk of out of synchronism closure is unacceptable. This will be installed by the *Network Operator* at the *User's cost*.
- (d) In addition, the check *synchronising* interlocks shall be installed on all *Users'* circuit breakers capable of out-of-synchronism closure, unless otherwise interlocked.

3.3.2 Technical characteristics

- (a) If required by the *Network Operator* a *User* shall provide *power system* stabilising facilities on each *synchronous Generation Unit* if *power system* simulations indicate such a requirement.
- (b) If required by the *Network Operator*, a *User* shall ensure that new *synchronous Generation Units* have a short circuit ratio of not less than 0.5 if necessary to limit the reduction in *power transfer* capabilities that are determined by transient stability considerations.
- (c) A *User* shall ensure that its *Generation Unit(s)* comply with the requirements advised by the *Network Operator* as to the minimum subtransient reactance that the *Generation Unit* may have if necessary to control fault levels on the *network*.
- (d) A *User* shall ensure that its *Generation Unit(s)* satisfy the *Network Operator's* reasonable requirements to ensure stability of the *electricity network* and maintain *power transfer* capabilities. These requirements will have an impact on the *Generator*, governor and excitation system parameters, including the inertia constant, of the *Generation Unit*.
- (e) The technical requirements described in this clause 3.3.2 are required to be demonstrated by the methods described in clause 5.4 of this *Code*.

3.3.2.1 Reactive power capability

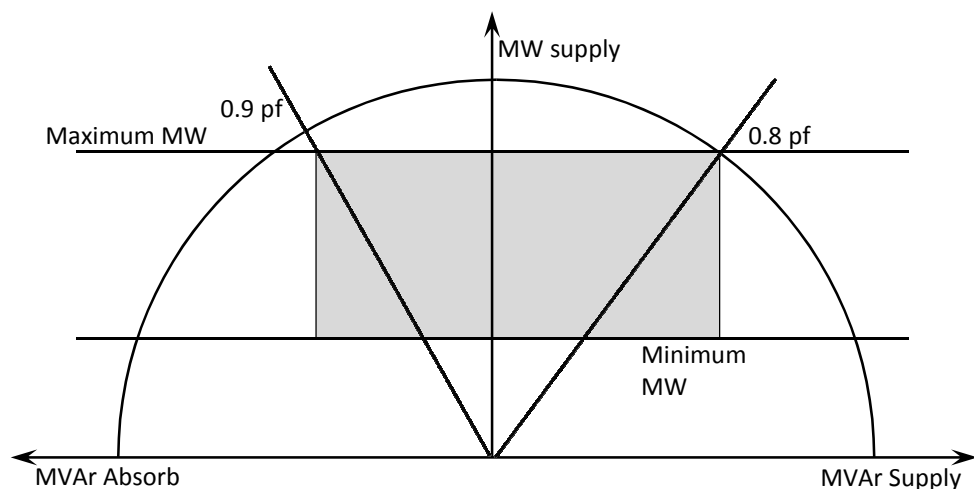
- (a) Each *Generation Unit*, and the *power station* in which the *Generation Unit* is located, shall be capable of continuously providing its full *reactive power output* within the full range of steady state *voltages* at the *connection point* permitted under clause 2 and clause 15.2 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

- (b) Unless otherwise agreed by the *Network Operator*:
- (1) Each synchronous *Generation Unit*, while operating at any level of active power output between its registered maximum and minimum active power output level, shall be capable of:
 - (i) *supplying* at its generator machine's terminals an amount of reactive power of at least the amount equal to the product of the rated active power output of the *Generation Unit* at nominal voltage and 0.750; and
 - (ii) absorbing at its generator machine's terminals an amount of reactive power of at least the amount equal to the product of the rated active power output of the *Generation Unit* at nominal voltage and 0.484.

This clause requires a *Generation Unit*, when producing its registered maximum *active power* output, to be capable of operating at any *power factor* between 0.8 lagging and 0.9 leading.

These details are displayed in Figure 1. The minimum *reactive power* capability requirement is shown shaded.

Figure 1 – Synchronous *Generation Unit* reactive power capability

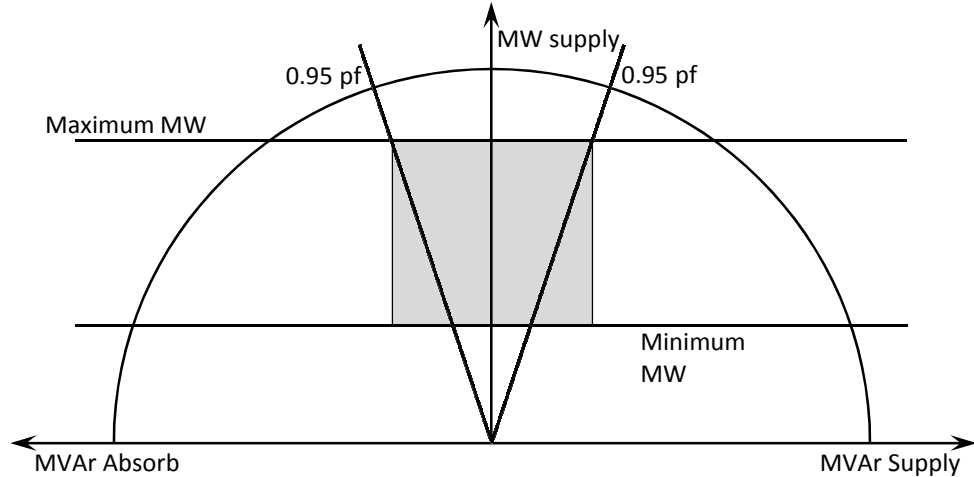


- (2) Each induction *Generation Unit*, while operating at any level of active power output between its registered maximum and minimum output level, shall be capable of *supplying* or absorbing an amount of reactive power at the *connection point* of at least the amount equal to the product of the rated active power output of the *Generation Unit* at nominal voltage and 0.329.

This clause requires an induction *Generation Unit*, when producing its registered maximum active power output, to be capable of operating at any *power factor* between 0.95 lagging and 0.95 leading.

These details are displayed in Figure 2. The minimum *reactive power* capability requirement is shown shaded.

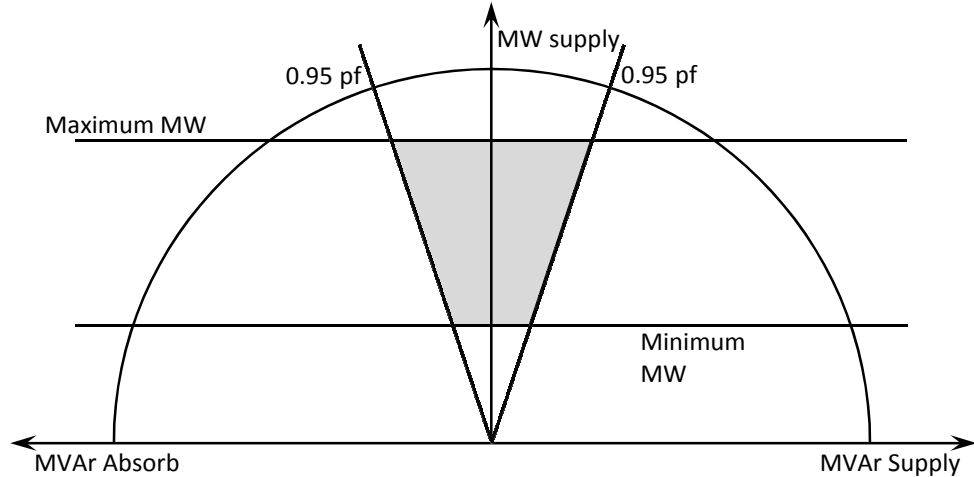
Figure 2 - Induction *Generation Unit* reactive power capability



- (3) Where necessary to meet the performance standards specified in clause 2, the *Network Operator* may require an induction *Generation Unit* to be capable of *supplying* or absorbing a greater amount of *reactive power* output than specified in clause 3.3.2.1(b)(2). The need for such a requirement will be determined by power system simulation studies and any such a requirement shall be included in the *Access Agreement*.
- (4) Each inverter coupled *Generation Unit* or converter coupled *Generation Unit*, while operating at any level of active power output between its registered maximum and minimum output level, shall be capable of *supplying* reactive power such that at the inverter or converter *connection point* the lagging power factor is less than or equal to 0.95 and shall be capable of absorbing reactive power at a leading power factor less than or equal to 0.95.

These details are displayed in Figure 3. The minimum *reactive power* capability requirement is shown shaded.

Figure 3 – Invertor coupled *Generation Unit reactive power* capability



- (5) Where necessary to meet the requirements of the *Code*, the *Network Operator* may require an inverter *Generation Unit* to be capable of supplying a reactive power output coincident with rated active power output over a larger power factor range. The need for such a requirement will be determined by power system simulation studies and any such a requirement shall be included in the *Access Agreement*.
- (c) For *Generation Units* not described by clause 3.3.2.1(b), the power factor requirements shall be as advised by the *Network Operator* and included in the *Access Agreement*. In determining the appropriate power factor requirement, the *Network Operator* shall consider the intrinsic capabilities of such a new technology and the potential for its penetration.
- (d) If the power factor capabilities specified in clause 3.3.2.1(b) cannot be provided, the *Generator* shall reach an arrangement under the *Access Agreement* with the *Network Operator* for the supply of the deficit in reactive power at the connection point. The basis for negotiation will be the responsibility of the proponent to provide an equivalent reactive performance (MVar output) over a range of voltages at the connection point.

Clause 3.3.2.1(d) is intended to facilitate flexibility in design by assisting proponents to connect *Generation Units* that, of themselves, are not capable of meeting the reactive power generation requirements specified in clause 3.3.2.1(b) through providing for the shortfall to be made up through some other means.

- (e) Each *Generation Unit's* connection shall be designed to permit the dispatch of the full active power and reactive power capability of the facility as specified in the *Access Agreement* under all power system conditions contained in clause 2.

3.3.2.2 Quality of electricity generated

- (a) When operating *unsynchronised*, a *synchronous Generation Unit* shall generate a constant *voltage* level with balanced phase *voltages* and harmonic *voltage* distortion equal to or less than permitted in accordance with either Australian Standard AS/NZS 1359.102.3:2000 "Rotating Electrical Machines - General Requirements" or a recognised equivalent international standard, as agreed between the *Network Operator* and the *User*.
- (b) For non-*synchronous Generators* the contributions to *quality of supply* shall be not less than that required to be provided by *Users* as defined in clause 2.4.

3.3.2.3 Generation Unit response to disturbances in the power system

The following are design requirements for *Generation Units*. *Network* performance requirements are detailed in clause 2 of this *Code*.

- (a) A *Generation Unit*, and the *power station* in which the *Generation Unit* is located, shall be capable of continuous uninterrupted operation within the *frequency* limits specified in clause 2.2.
- (b) Subject to clause 3.3.2.3(b) a *Generation Unit*, and the *power station* in which the *Generation Unit* is located, shall be capable of continuous uninterrupted operation during the occurrence of the range of *voltage* variation conditions permitted by clause 2.3, including the *voltage* dip caused by a *network* fault which causes *voltage* at the *connection point* to drop to zero for up to 500 milliseconds in any one phase or combination of phases, followed by a period of ten seconds where *voltage* may vary in the range 80-110% of the nominal *voltage*, and a subsequent period of three minutes in which the *voltage* may vary within the range 90-110% of the nominal *voltage*.
- (c) The *Network Operator* may agree to vary the requirements of clause 3.3.2.3(b) provided that it is satisfied that the *Network* performance standards of clause 2 of the *Code* and the *system* stability requirements of clause 16 of the *Network Planning Criteria* would be met.

3.3.2.4 Partial load rejection

A *Generation Unit* shall be capable of continuous uninterrupted operation, during and following a *load* reduction which occurs in less than 0.5 seconds, from a fully or partially *loaded* condition provided that the *load* reduction is less than 50% of the *Generation Unit's nameplate rating* and the *load* remains above minimum *load* or as otherwise agreed between the *Network Operator* and the relevant *User* and stated in the *Access Agreement* between them.

3.3.2.5 Loading rates

A *scheduled Generation Unit* shall be capable of increasing or decreasing *load* in response to a manually or remotely initiated *loading* order at a rate not less than 5% of *nameplate rating* per minute or as otherwise agreed between the *Network Operator* and the relevant *User*, stated in their *Access Agreement*.

3.3.2.6 Safe shutdown without external electricity supply

A *Generation Unit* shall be capable of being safely shut down without electricity supply available from the *network* at the relevant *connection point*.

3.3.2.7 Restart following restoration of external electricity supply

- (a) If reasonably required by the *Network Operator*, a *Generation Unit* shall be capable of being restarted and *synchronised* to the *power system* without unreasonable delay following restoration of external supply from the *network power system* at the relevant *connection point*, after being without external supply for two hours or less, provided that the *Generation Unit* was *disconnected* for any reason other than a fault within the *Generation Unit*.
- (b) Examples of unreasonable delay in the restart of a *Generation Unit* are:
- (1) delays not inherent in the design of the relevant start-up facilities and which could reasonably have been eliminated by the relevant *User*; and
 - (2) the start-up facilities for a new *Generation Unit* not being designed to minimise start up *time* delays for the *Generation Unit* following loss of external supplies for two hours or less.

3.3.2.8 Protection of Generation Units from power system disturbances

- (a) A *Generation Unit* shall be automatically *disconnected* from the *power system* in response to conditions at the relevant *connection point* that are not within the agreed engineering limits for operating the *Generation Unit* or where the conditions may impact on other *Users*. If reasonably required by the *Network Operator*, these abnormal conditions will include and are not necessarily limited to:
- (1) loss of synchronism (out-of-step *protection*/pole-slip *protection* may need to be located on the *network*; this should be determined by performing *power system* simulation studies);
 - (2) sustained high or low *frequency* outside the *power system frequency* range 47 Hz to 52 Hz (in the case of operation below 47 Hz but at or above 45 Hz, all *Generators* shall remain *connected* to the *Network Operator's network* for a period of at least two seconds - refer to clause 2.2.2);
 - (3) sustained excessive *Generation Unit* stator current that cannot be automatically controlled;
 - (4) excessive high or low stator *voltage*;
 - (5) excessive *voltage* to *frequency* ratio;
 - (6) excessive negative phase sequence current;
 - (7) loss of excitation; and
 - (8) reverse power.

- (b) The actual settings of the *protection* equipment installed on a *Generation Unit* determined by the *User* to satisfy requirement (a) of this clause shall be consistent with *power system* performance requirements specified in clause 2 and shall be approved by the *Network Operator* in respect of their potential to reduce *power system security*. They shall be such as to maximise *plant* availability, to assist the control of the *power system* under emergency conditions and to minimise the risk of inadvertent *disconnection* consistent with the requirements of *plant* safety and durability.
- (c) The *Network Operator* shall bear no responsibility for any loss or damage incurred by the *User* as a result of a fault on either the *power system*, the *User's facility* or within the *Generation Unit* itself.

3.3.2.9 Users' protection systems that impact on power system security

Refer to clause 3.2.3 for the requirements of *protection systems* for *Users' plant*. The requirements of clause 3.2.3 apply only to *protection* that is necessary to maintain *power system security*. *Protection* solely for *User* risks is at the *User's* discretion.

3.3.2.10 Generator transformer tapping

Unless otherwise agreed between the *Network Operator* and the *User*, the *Generator transformer* of a *Generation Unit* shall be capable of off-load tap-changing within the range specified in the relevant *Access Agreement*.

3.3.2.11 Tripping of Generation Units and associated loads

Unless otherwise agreed by the *Network Operator*, the tripping of a *User's Generation Unit* which is *connected* to the *network* will require the intertripping of *associated loads* within 0.2 seconds unless the *loads* are the subject of an *Access Agreement* with the *Network Operator* and the *User* has contracted for the provision of *standby power* and that *standby power* is available at the *time* of the tripping of the *Generation Unit*.

3.3.3 Monitoring and control requirements

3.3.3.1 Remote monitoring

The *Network Operator* will require the *Users* to:

- (a) Provide *remote monitoring equipment* ("RME") to enable the *Network Operator* and the *Power System Controller* to remotely monitor performance of a *Generation Unit* (including its *dynamic performance*) where this is reasonably necessary in real *time* for control, planning or security of the *power system*; and
- (b) Upgrade, modify or replace any *RME* already installed in a *power station* provided that the existing *RME* is, in the reasonable opinion of the *Network Operator*, no longer fit for purpose and notice is given in writing to the relevant *Users*.

- (c) In clause 3.3.3.1(a) and 3.3.3.1 (b), the *RME* provided, upgraded, modified or replaced (as applicable) shall conform to an acceptable standard as agreed by the *Network Operator* and shall be compatible with the *Network Operator's SCADA system*, including the requirements of clause 4.9 of this *Code*.
- (d) Input information to *RME* may include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - (1) Status Indications
 - (i) *Generation Unit* circuit breaker open/closed (double pole)
 - (ii) remote *Generation load* control on/off
 - (iii) *Generation Unit* operating mode
 - (iv) governor limiting operation
 - (v) *connection* to the *network*
 - (2) Alarms
 - (i) *Generation Unit* circuit breaker tripped by *protection*
 - (ii) prepare to off *load*
 - (3) *Protection Defective Alarms*
 - (4) Measured Values
 - (i) Gross *active power* output of each *Generation Unit*
 - (ii) Net station *active power* import or export at each *connection point*
 - (iii) Gross *reactive power* output of each *Generation Unit*
 - (iv) Net station *reactive power* import or export at each *connection point*
 - (v) *Generation Unit* stator *voltage*
 - (vi) *Generation Unit* transformer *tap position*
 - (vii) Net station output of *active energy* (impulse)
 - (viii) *Generation Unit* remote *Generation* control high limit value
 - (ix) *Generation Unit* remote *Generation* control low limit value
 - (x) *Generation Unit* remote *Generation* control rate limit value
 - (5) Such other input information reasonably required by the *Network Operator*.

3.3.3.2 Remote control

- (a) A *User* may install *remote control equipment* ("*RCE*") that is adequate to enable the *Power System Controller* to remotely control:
 - (1) the *active power* output of any *Generation Unit*; and
 - (2) the *reactive power* output of any *Generation Unit*;
 in a system emergency.

- (b) Where a *User* does not provide *RCE*, the *User* shall satisfy the *Network Operator* and the *Power System Controller* that adequate arrangements are in place to allow the *Power System Controller* to give *directions* to the *User* for the control of the *Users' Generation Units* in a system emergency, and to allow the *User* to respond appropriately to those *directions*. These arrangements shall include the control of *active power* and *reactive power*.
- (c) Unless agreed otherwise, the relevant *User* will be responsible for the following actions at the request of the *Network Operator*:
 - (1) activating and de-activating *RCE* installed in relation to any *Generation Unit*; and
 - (2) setting the minimum and maximum levels to which, and a maximum rate at which, the *Power System Controller* will be able to adjust the performance of any *Generation Unit* using *RCE*.

3.3.3.3 Communications equipment

- (a) A *User* shall provide electricity supplies for the *RME* and *RCE* installed in relation to its *Generation Units* capable of keeping these facilities available for at least eight hours following total loss of *supply* at the *connection point* for the relevant *Generation Unit*.
- (b) A *User* shall provide communications paths (with appropriate redundancy) between the *RME* or *RCE* installed at any of its *Generation Units* to a communications interface at the relevant *power station* and in a location reasonably acceptable to the *Network Operator*.
- (c) Communications systems between this communications interface and the relevant *control centre* shall be the responsibility of the *Network Operator* unless otherwise agreed.
- (d) The *User* shall meet the cost of the communications systems, unless otherwise determined by the *Network Operator*.
- (e) Telecommunications between the *Power System Controller* and *Generators* shall be established in accordance with the requirements set down below for *operational communications*.
 - (1) *Primary Speech Facility*
 - (i) Each *User* shall provide and maintain equipment by means of which routine and emergency control telephone calls may be established between the *User's* responsible Engineer/Operator and the *Power System Controller*.
 - (ii) The facilities to be provided, including the interface requirement between the *Power System Controller's* equipment and the *User's* equipment shall be specified by the *Network Operator*.

(2) Back-up Speech Facility

- (i) Where the *Network Operator* advises a *User* that a back-up speech facility to the primary facility is required, the *Network Operator* will provide and maintain a separate telephone link or radio installation. The costs of the equipment shall be recovered through the charge for connection.
- (ii) The *Network Operator* shall be responsible for radio system planning and for obtaining radio licenses for equipment used in relation to the *Network Operator networks*.

3.3.3.4 Governor system

- (a) All *Generation Units* shall have an automatic governing system capable of droop governing. These *governor systems* shall include facilities for both speed and load control.
- (b) The droop setting of the governor shall be adjustable and capable of operating in the range 1% to 6% droop.
- (c) The *Power System Controller* will determine the governor mode of a *Generation Unit* in the system.
- (d) Unless otherwise agreed between the *Network Operator* and the relevant *User* and stated in the *Access Agreement* between them, *Generation Units* shall normally operate in 'droop' mode.
- (e) If in the *Access Agreement*, the *Network Operator* and the relevant *User* agree to operate the *Generation Unit* in 'block load' mode (constant active power output of the *Generation Unit*) or 'import/export' mode (constant active power delivery into the system at the connection point), the *Generation Unit* shall automatically change to regulating mode if the *Generation Unit* is islanded from the system.
- (f) The *User* shall notify the *Power System Controller* prior to a *Generation Unit* being operated in a mode where the *Generation Unit* will be unable to respond as specified in the *Access Agreement*.
- (g) The steady state deadband of a *Generation Unit* (sum of increase and decrease in power system frequency before a measurable change in the *Generation Unit's active power* output occurs) shall be less than 0.05 Hz.
- (h) For a load increase of 20% of the *Generation Unit's nameplate rating*, the *Generation Unit* shall re-enter the steady state deadband within 3 seconds of the load change, provided that the load on the *Generation Unit* after the load increase does not exceed the *Generation Unit's nameplate rating*.
- (i) The *governor system* of a *Generation Unit* shall be adjusted for stable performance under all operating conditions.
- (j) The structure and parameter settings of all components of the governor control equipment, including the speed/load controller, actuators (for

example hydraulic valve positioning systems), valve flow characteristics, limiters, valve operating sequences and steam tables for steam turbine (as appropriate) shall be provided to the *Network Operator* in sufficient detail to enable the dynamics of these components to be characterised for short and long term simulation studies. This shall include a control block diagram and all model parameters in suitable form to perform dynamic simulations and compatible with the *power system* analysis software used by the *Network Operator* (currently PSS/E from Siemens PTI). The proposed settings for the *governor system* for all expected modes of governor operation shall also be provided.

- (k) These parameters shall not be varied without prior approval of the *Network Operator*.

The overriding objective of a *Generation Unit's* voltage control system is to maintain the specified voltage range at the *connection point*.

Each Generator must therefore provide sufficient *reactive power* injection into, or absorption from, the *transmission system* or *distribution system* to meet the *reactive power* requirements of its loads, plus all *reactive power* losses required to deliver its real power output at *system* voltages within the ranges specified in the relevant *Access Agreement* for normal operation and contingency conditions.

3.3.3.5 Excitation control system

The *excitation control system* of a *synchronous Generation Unit* shall be capable of:

- (a) limiting *Generation Unit* operation at all *load* levels to within *Generation Unit* capabilities for continuous operation;
- (b) controlling the *Generation Unit* output to maintain the short-time average *Generation Unit* output *voltage* at highest rated level (which shall be at least 5% above the nominal output *voltage* and is usually 10% above the nominal output *voltage*);
- (c) maintaining adequate *Generation Unit* stability under all operating conditions including providing *power system* stabilising action if fitted with a *power system stabiliser*;
- (d) in the case of a rotating synchronous generator, the five second ceiling excitation *voltage* shall be at least twice the excitation *voltage* required to achieve maximum continuous rating at nominal *voltage*; and
- (e) providing reactive current compensation settable for boost or droop unless otherwise agreed by the *Network Operator*.

3.3.3.6 Excitation control system performance

- (a) New *synchronous Generation Units* shall be fitted with fast acting *excitation control systems* utilising modern technology. AC exciter, rotating rectifier or *static excitation systems* shall be provided for any new *Generation Units* with

a rating greater than 10 MW or for new smaller *Generation Units* within a *power station* totalling in excess of 10 MW. *Excitation control systems* shall provide *voltage* regulation to within 0.5% of the selected set point value.

- (b) New non-synchronous *Generation Units* must be fitted with fast acting voltage and / or reactive power control systems, which must utilise modern technology and be approved by the *Network Operator*. Control systems must provide regulation to within 0.5% of the selected set point value.
- (c) Unless agreed by the *Network Operator*, new *synchronous Generation Units* shall incorporate *power system stabiliser* circuits that modulate *Generation Unit* field *voltage* in response to *changes* in power output and/or shaft speed and/or any other equivalent input signal approved by the *Network Operator*. The stabilising circuits shall be responsive and adjustable over a *frequency* range that shall include frequencies from 0.1 Hz to 2.5 Hz.
- (d) The *Network Operator* may require *power system* stabiliser circuits on *synchronous Generation Units* with ratings less than or equal to 10 MW or smaller *synchronous Generation Units* within a *power station* with a total *active power* output capability less than or equal to 10 MW (if *power system* simulations indicate a need for such a requirement). Before commissioning of any *power system* stabiliser, the *Generator* must propose preliminary settings for the *power system* stabiliser, which must be approved by the *Network Operator*.
- (e) *Power system* stabilisers may also be required for *non-synchronous Generation Units*. The performance characteristics of these *Generation Units* with respect to *power system* stability must be similar to those required for *synchronous Generation Units*. The requirement for a *power system* stabiliser and its structure and settings will be determined by the *Network Operator* from *power system* simulations.
- (f) Before commissioning of any *power system stabiliser*, its preliminary settings shall be agreed by the *Network Operator*. The *User* shall propose these preliminary settings that should be derived from system simulation studies and the study results reviewed by the *Network Operator*.

- (g) The performance characteristics set out in Table 7 are required for AC exciter, rotating rectifier and *static excitation systems*.

Table 7 – Synchronous Generator excitation system performance requirements

Performance Item	Units	Static Excitation	A.C. Exciter or Rotating Rectifier	Notes
<p>Sensitivity: A sustained 0.5% error between the <i>voltage</i> reference and the sensed <i>voltage</i> will produce an excitation <i>change</i> of not less than 1.0 per unit.</p>	Open loop gain (ratio)	200 minimum	200 minimum	1
<p>Field <i>voltage</i> rise time: <i>Time</i> for field <i>voltage</i> to rise from rated <i>voltage</i> to excitation ceiling <i>voltage</i> following the application of a short duration impulse to the <i>voltage</i> reference.</p>	second	0.05 maximum	0.5 maximum	2
Settling <i>time</i> with the <i>Generator synchronised</i> following a disturbance equivalent to a 5% step <i>change</i> in the sensed <i>Generator</i> terminal <i>voltage</i> .	second	2.5 maximum	5 maximum	3
Settling <i>time</i> with the <i>Generator unsynchronised</i> following a disturbance equivalent to a 5% step <i>change</i> in the sensed <i>Generator</i> terminal <i>voltage</i> . Shall be met at all operating points within the <i>Generator</i> capability.	second	1.5 maximum	2.5 maximum	3
Settling <i>time</i> following any disturbance that causes an excitation limiter to operate.	second	5 maximum	5 maximum	3
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> One per unit is that field <i>voltage</i> required to produce nominal <i>voltage</i> on the air gap line of the <i>Generator</i> open circuit characteristic (Refer IEEE Standard 115-1983 – Test Procedures for Synchronous Machines). Rated field <i>voltage</i> is that <i>voltage</i> required to give nominal <i>Generator</i> terminal <i>voltage</i> when the <i>Generator</i> is operating at its maximum continuous rating. Rise <i>time</i> is defined as the <i>time</i> taken for the field <i>voltage</i> to rise from 10% to 90% of the increment value. Settling <i>time</i> is defined as the <i>time</i> taken for the <i>Generator</i> terminal <i>voltage</i> to settle and stay within an error band of $\pm 10\%$ of its increment value. 				

- (h) The performance characteristics required for the voltage or reactive power control systems of all non-synchronous *Generation Units* are specified in Table 8.

Table 8 – Non-synchronous Generator voltage or reactive power control system performance requirements

Performance Item	Units	Limiting Value	Notes
<p>Sensitivity: A sustained 0.5% error between the reference <i>voltage</i> and the sensed <i>voltage</i> must produce an output change of not less than 100% of the <i>reactive power generation</i> capability of the <i>Generation Unit</i>, measured at the point of control.</p>	Open loop gain (ratio)	200 minimum	1
<p>Rise time: Time for the controlled parameter (<i>voltage</i> or <i>reactive power</i> output) to rise from the initial value to 90% of the change between the initial value and the final value following the application of a 5% step change to the <i>control system</i> reference.</p>	second	1.5 maximum	2
<p>Small disturbance settling time Settling time of the controlled parameter with the <i>Generation Unit</i> connected to the <i>transmission or distribution network</i> following a step change in the <i>control system</i> reference that is not large enough to cause saturation of the controlled output parameter. Must be met at all operating points within the <i>Generation Unit's</i> capability.</p>	second	2.5 maximum	3
<p>Large disturbance settling time Settling time of the controlled parameter following a large disturbance, including a <i>transmission or distribution network</i> fault, which would cause the maximum value of the controlled output parameter to be just exceeded.</p>	second	5 maximum	3
<p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A control system with both proportional and integral actions must be capable of achieving a minimum equivalent gain of 200. 2. The controlled parameter and the point where the parameter is to be measured must be agreed and included in the relevant <i>Access Agreement</i>. 3. Settling time is defined as the time taken for the controlled parameter to settle and stay within an error band of $\pm 10\%$ of its increment value. 			

- (i) The *Network Operator* shall approve the structure and parameter settings of all components of the *excitation control system*, including the *voltage* regulator, *power system stabiliser*, power amplifiers and all excitation limiters.
- (j) The structure and settings of the *excitation control system* shall not be *changed*, corrected or adjusted in any manner without prior written

notification to the *Network Operator*. The *Network Operator* may require *Generation Unit* tests to demonstrate compliance with the requirements of Table 7 or Table 8. The *Network Operator* may witness such tests.

- (k) Settings may require alteration from *time to time* as advised by the *Network Operator*. The cost of altering the settings and verifying subsequent performance shall be borne by the *User*, provided alterations are not made more than once in each 18 *months* for each *Generation Unit*. If more frequent *changes* are requested the person making that request shall pay all costs on that occasion.
- (l) Excitation limiters shall be provided for under excitation and over excitation and may be provided for *voltage to frequency* ratio. The *Generation Unit* shall be capable of stable operation for indefinite periods while under the control of any excitation limiter. Excitation limiters shall not detract from the performance of any stabilising circuits and shall have settings applied which are co-ordinated with all *protection systems*.

3.3.4 Power station auxiliary transformers

In cases where a *power station* takes its auxiliary supplies through a *transformer* via a separate *connection point*, the *User* shall comply with the conditions for *connection of loads* (clause 3.6) in respect of that *connection point*.

3.3.5 Synchronising

- (a) The *User* shall provide and install manual or automatic *synchronising* at the *Generator* circuit breakers.
- (b) Check *synchronising* shall be provided on all *Generator* circuit breakers and any other circuit breakers, unless interlocked (as outlined in clause 3.3.1.1), that are capable of *connecting the User's Generation Facilities* to the *network*.
- (c) Prior to the initial *synchronisation* of the *Generation Unit(s)* to the *network*, the *User* and the *Power System Controller* shall agree on the operational procedures necessary for *synchronisation*.

3.3.6 Secure electricity supplies

Secure electricity supplies of adequate capacity to provide for the operation for at least eight hours of *plant* performing *metering*, communication, monitoring, and *protection* functions, on the loss of AC supplies, shall be provided by a *User*.

3.4 Requirements for connection of Small Generators

3.4.1 Scope

- (a) This clause 3.4.1 addresses the requirements for the *connection of Small Generation Units* and groups of *Small Generation Units*.
- (b) This clause 3.4.1 does not apply to the *connection of Small Inverter Energy Systems*, in respect of which clause 3.5 applies.

3.4.2 Objectives

- (a) The issues addressed by this clause 3.4.2 are:
 - (1) the possibility that *Small Generation Units* embedded in *networks* may affect the *quality of supply* to other *Users*, cause reverse *power transfer*, use up *network* capacity, create a *network* switching hazard and increase risks for operational personnel;
 - (2) the possibility that a *Small Generation Unit* connected to a *network* could become islanded on to a *de-energised* part of the *network* resulting in safety and *quality of supply* concerns; and
 - (3) a simplified *connection* process for *Small Generators*.

3.4.3 Categorisation of facilities

- (a) This clause 3.4.3 covers *Small Generation Units* of all types, whether using renewable or non-renewable *energy* sources.
- (b) Unless otherwise specified, technical requirements for *Small Generation Units* will apply at the *connection point*, rather than at the *Generator* machine terminals, except that the *reactive power* requirements for *synchronous Small Generation Units* will apply at the *Generator* machine terminals.
- (c) *Connection points* for small *power stations* are characterised as:
 - (1) *high voltage connected*: 3 phase, 11 kV or 22 kV; or
 - (2) *low voltage connected*: 1, 2 or 3 phase plus neutral, 230 V or 400 V.
 - (3) Where a *Small Generation Unit* is the only *facility connected* to a *low voltage network* the *Generator* may choose to have the *power station* assessed for compliance as if the *power station* was *high voltage connected*. Prior to another *User* subsequently *connecting* to the same *low voltage network* the *Network Operator* shall reassess the *power station* for compliance with the requirements for *low voltage connected power stations* and the *Small Generator* shall rectify any noncompliance identified in the reassessment.
- (d) The mode of operation of a *Small Generation Unit* in a small *power station* is characterised as being in:
 - (1) continuous parallel operation with the *network*, and either exporting electricity to the *network* or not exporting electricity to it;
 - (2) occasional parallel operation with the *network*, and either exporting electricity to the *network* or not exporting electricity to it, including *Generation Units* participating in peak lopping and system *peak load* management for up to 200 hours per year;
 - (3) short term test parallel operation with the *network*, and either exporting electricity to the *network* or not exporting electricity to it, and having a maximum duration of parallel operation 2 hours per event and 24 hours per year; or

- (4) bumpless (make before break) transfer operation, being:
 - (i) operation in rapid transfer mode where, when *load* is transferred between the *Generation Unit* and the *network* or vice versa, the *Generation Unit* is *synchronised* for a maximum of one second per event; or
 - (ii) operation in gradual transfer mode where, when *load* is transferred between the *Generation Unit* and the *network* or vice versa, the *Generation Unit* is *synchronised* for a maximum of 60 seconds per event.

3.4.4 Information to be provided by a *Small Generator*

- (a) A *Small Generator* shall provide all information in relation to the design, construction, operation and configuration of that small *power station* as is required by the *Network Operator* to ensure that the operation and performance standards of the *network*, or other *Users*, are not adversely affected by the operation of the *power station*.
- (b) Details of the kinds of information that may be required for *Small Generators* are included in clause 11.

3.4.5 Safety and *reliability*

The requirements imposed on a *Small Generator* by this clause 3.4.5 are intended to provide minimum safety and *reliability* standards for the *network* and other *Users*.

- (a) A *Small Generator* shall design its facilities in accordance with applicable standards and regulations, *good electricity industry practice* and the manufacturers' recommendations.
- (b) The safety and *reliability* of the *network* and the equipment of other *Users* are paramount and *connection* applications shall be evaluated accordingly.
- (c) A *Small Generator* shall not *connect* or *reconnect* to the *network* if the safety and *reliability* of the *network* or *Users* would be placed at risk.
- (d) Where it is apparent that the operation of equipment installed in accordance with the requirements of this clause may have an adverse impact on the operation, safety or performance of the *network*, or on the *quality of supply* to other *Users*, the *Network Operator* shall consult with the *Users* to reach an agreement on an acceptable solution.
- (e) Pursuant to clause 3.4.5(d), the *Network Operator* may require the *Small Generator* to test or modify its relevant equipment.
- (f) Unless otherwise agreed in the relevant *Access Agreement*, the *Network Operator* may require a *Small Generator* not to operate equipment in abnormal *network* operating conditions.

- (g) Equipment directly *connected* to the *connection point* of a small *power station* shall be rated for the *maximum fault current* at the *connection point* specified in clause 2.8.
- (h) A *Small Generator* shall ensure that the *maximum fault current* contribution from a *Generation Unit* or small *power station* is not of a magnitude that will allow the total fault current at the *connection point* to exceed the levels specified in clause 2.8 for all normal operating conditions.

3.4.6 *Small Generation Unit* characteristics

- (a) To assist in controlling *network* fault levels, *Small Generators* shall ensure that *Generation Units* comply with the *Network Operator's* requirements relating to *minimum fault current* and *maximum fault current* contribution through a *connection point*.
- (b) If the *connection* or *disconnection* of a *User's* small *power station* causes or is likely to cause excessively high or low fault levels, this shall be addressed by other technical measures specified in the relevant *Access Agreement*.

3.4.7 Connection and operation

3.4.7.1 Main switch

- (a) Each *facility* at which a *Small Generation Unit* in a small *power station* is *connected* to the *network* shall contain one main switch provided by the *User* for each *connection point* and one main switch for each *Generation Unit*, where a *Small Generation Unit* shares a *connection point* with other *Small Generation Units* or *loads*. For larger installations, additional *connection points* and main switches or a dedicated feeder may be required.
- (b) Switches shall be automatically operated, fault current breaking and making, ganged switches or circuit breakers. The relevant *facility* may also contain similarly rated interposed paralleling switches for the purpose of providing alternative *synchronised* switching operations.
- (c) At each relevant *connection point* there shall be a means of visible and lockable isolation and test points accessible to the *Network Operator's* operational personnel. This may be a withdrawable switch, a switch with visible contacts, a set of removable links or other approved means. It shall be possible for the *Network Operator's* operational personnel to fit safety locks on the isolation point. *Low voltage Small Generation Units* with moulded case circuit breakers and fault limiting fuses with removable links are acceptable for isolation points in accordance with this sub clause.

3.4.7.2 Synchronising

- (a) For a synchronous *Small Generation Unit* in a small *power station*, a *Small Generator* shall provide automatic *synchronising* equipment at each *Small Generation Unit* circuit breaker.

- (b) Check *synchronising* shall be provided on all *Small Generation Unit* circuit breakers and any other switching devices that are capable of *connecting* the *User's* generating equipment to the *network* unless otherwise interlocked to the satisfaction of the *Network Operator*.
- (c) Prior to the initial *synchronisation* of the *Generation Unit(s)* to the *network*, the *Small Generator* and the *Network Operator* shall agree on written operational procedures for *synchronisation*.

3.4.7.3 Safe shutdown without external supply

A *Small Generation Unit* shall be capable of being safely shut down without electricity *supply* being available from the *network*.

3.4.8 Power quality and *voltage change*

- (a) A *Small Generator* shall ensure that the *network* performance standards of clause 2 are met when a small *power station* is *connected* by it to the *network*.
- (b) The step *voltage change* at the *connection point* for *connection* and *disconnection* shall comply with the requirements of clause 2.3.3. These requirements may be achieved by *synchronising* individual *Generation Units* sequentially. On *low voltage* feeders, *voltage changes* up to 5% may be allowed in some circumstances with the approval of the *Network Operator*.
- (c) The steady state *voltage* rise at the *connection point* resulting from export of power to the *network* shall not exceed 2% and shall not cause the *voltage* limits specified in clause 2.3.1 to be exceeded.
- (d) When operating *unsynchronised*, a synchronous *Small Generation Unit* in a small *power station* shall generate a constant *voltage* level with balanced phase *voltages* and harmonic *voltage* distortion equal to or less than permitted in accordance with either *Australian Standard AS 1359 (1997)* "General Requirements for Rotating Electrical Machines" or a recognised relevant international standard, as agreed between the *Network Operator* and the *User*.

3.4.9 Remote control, monitoring and communications

- (a) For *Small Generation Units* exporting 1 MW or more to the *network* the *Generator* shall provide for:
 - (1) tripping of the *Small Generation Unit* remotely from the *Network Operator's control centre*;
 - (2) a close-enable interlock operated from the *Small Network Operator's control centre*; and
 - (3) remote monitoring at the *control centre* of (signed) MW, MVar and *voltage*.
- (b) For *Small Generation Units* exporting less than 1 MW monitoring may not be required.

- (c) Where concerns for safety and *reliability* arise that are not adequately addressed by automatic *protection systems* and interlocks, the *Network Operator* may require the *Small Generator* to provide remote monitoring and remote control of some functions in accordance with this clause 3.4.9.
- (d) A *Small Generator* shall provide a continuous communication link with the *Network Operator's control centre* for monitoring and control for *Small Generation Units* exporting 1 MW and above to the *network*. For *Small Generation Units* exporting below 1 MW, non-continuous monitoring and control may be required eg. a *bi-directional* dial up arrangement.
- (e) A *Small Generator* shall have available at all times a telephone link or other communication channel to enable voice communications between a small *power station* and the *Network Operator's control centre*.
- (f) For *Small Generation Units* exporting above 1 MW, a dedicated telephone link or other dedicated communication channel may be required.

3.4.10 Protection

3.4.10.1 General

- (a) A *Small Generator* shall provide, as a minimum, the *protection* functions specified in this clause in accordance with the aggregate rated capacity of *Small Generation Units* in a small *power station* at the *connection point*.
- (b) A *Small Generator's* proposed *protection system* and settings shall be approved by the *Network Operator*, who shall assess their likely effect on the *network* and may specify modified or additional requirements to ensure that:
 - (1) the *network* performance standards specified in clause 2 are met;
 - (2) the *power transfer capability* of the *network* is not reduced; and
 - (3) the *quality of supply* to other *Users* is maintained. Information that may be required by the *Network Operator* prior to giving approval is specified in clause 11.
- (c) A *Small Generator's* *protection system* shall clear internal *plant* faults and coordinate with the *Network Operator's* *protection system*.
- (d) The design of a *Small Generator's* *protection system* shall ensure that failure of any *protection* device cannot result in the *network* being placed in an unsafe operating mode or lead to a disturbance or safety risk to the *Network Operator* or to other *Users*. This may be achieved by providing back-up *protection schemes* or designing the *protection system* to be fail-safe, eg. to trip on failure.
- (e) All *protection apparatus* shall comply with the IEC 60255 series of standards. Integrated control and *protection apparatus* may be used provided that it can be demonstrated that the *protection* functions are functionally independent of the control functions, ie. failure or maloperation of the control features will not impair operation of the *protection system*.

- (f) All *Small Generators* shall provide under and over *voltage*, under and over *frequency* and overcurrent *protection schemes* in accordance with the equipment rating.
- (g) All *Small Generators* shall provide earth fault *protection* for earth faults on the *network*. All small *power stations* connected at high *voltage* shall have a sensitive earth fault *protection scheme*.
- (h) The earth fault *protection scheme* may be:
 - (1) earth fault; or
 - (2) neutral *voltage* displacementdepending on the *connection type*).
- (i) No *Small Generator* may *supply* a de-energised *network* and all small *power stations* shall provide *protection* against abnormal *network* conditions, as specified in clause 3.2.3, on one or more phases. This *protection* against loss of external *supply* may be:
 - (1) loss of mains;
 - (2) rate of *change of frequency* (ROCOF);
 - (3) vector surge;
 - (4) reverse power; or
 - (5) *directional* over current.
- (j) All *Small Generators* that have an export limit shall have reverse power or *directional* current limits set appropriate to the export limit.
- (k) All *Small Generators* shall have loss of AC and DC auxiliary *supply protection*, which shall immediately trip all switches that depend on that *supply* for operation of their *protection*.
- (l) Where *synchronisation* is *time* limited, the *Small Generator* shall be *disconnected* by an independent timer.
- (m) *Small Generation Units* that are only operated in parallel with the *network* during rapid bumpless transfer shall be protected by an independent *timer* that will *disconnect* the *Generation Unit* from the *network* if the bumpless transfer successfully completed. Automatic transfer switches shall comply with Australian Standard AS 60947.6.2 (2004). For the avoidance of doubt *Small Generation Units* covered by sub-clause 3.4.10.1(m) need not comply with sub sub-clauses (f) to (l) of clause 3.4.10.1. This exemption recognises that the rapid bumpless transfer will be completed or the *Generation Unit* will be *disconnected* by the *disconnection* timer before other *protection schemes* operate. *Protection* of the *Small Generation Unit* when it is not operating in parallel with the *network* is at the discretion of the *Small Generator*.

3.4.10.2 Pole slipping

Where it is determined that the disturbance resulting from loss of synchronism is likely to exceed that permitted in clause 2.6, the *Small Generator* shall install a pole slipping *protection scheme*.

3.4.10.3 Islanding *protection* and intertripping

- (a) For sustained parallel operation (which excludes rapid or gradual bumpless transfer), islanding *protection schemes* of two different functional types shall be provided to prevent a *Small Generation Unit* energising a part of the *network* that has become isolated from the remainder of the *transmission* or *network* under all operating modes. The *Small Generator* shall demonstrate that two different functional types of islanding *protection schemes* have been provided.
- (b) *Small Generation Units* designed for gradual bumpless transfer shall be protected with at least one functional type of islanding *protection scheme*.
- (c) Islanding *protection* shall operate within 2 seconds to ensure *disconnection* before the first *network* reclosing attempt (typically 5 seconds). Relay settings are to be agreed with the *Network Operator*. It should be assumed that the *Network Operator* will always attempt to auto-reclose to restore *supply* following transient faults.
- (d) In cases where, in the opinion of the *Network Operator*, the risk of undetected islanding of part of the *network* and the *Small Generator's facility* remains significant, the *Network Operator* may also require the installation of an intertripping link between the *Small Generator's* main switch(es) and the feeder circuit breaker(s) in the zone *substation* or other upstream *protection* device nominated by the *Network Operator*.

3.4.10.4 Protection of *Small Generator's* equipment

- (a) This clause 3.4.10.4 applies only to *protection* necessary to maintain *power system security*. A *Small Generator* shall design and specify any additional *protection* required to guard against risks within the *Small Generator's facility*.
- (b) Any failure of the *Small Generator's* tripping supplies, *protection apparatus* or circuit breaker trip coils required under clause 3.4.10 shall be alarmed within the *Small Generator's facility* and operating procedures put in place to ensure that prompt action is taken to remedy such failures. As an alternative to alarming, *Small Generation Unit* main switches may be tripped automatically.

3.4.11 Commissioning and testing

The *Small Generator* shall comply with the testing and commissioning requirements for *Small Generation Units* connected to the *network* specified in clause 7.

3.4.12 Technical matters to be coordinated

As an alternative to *network augmentation*, the *Network Operator* may require a *Generator* to provide additional *protection schemes* to ensure that operating limits and agreed import and export limits are not exceeded.

3.5 Requirements for *connection of Small Inverter Energy Systems*

The *Network Operator* is not able to enter an *energy* buyback agreement directly. A *User* wishing to enter into such an agreement shall apply to a participating retailer. It should also be noted that whereas this clause 3.5 covers *connection* issues for *Small Inverter Energy Systems* of up to 30 kVA, the maximum capacity that a retailer may be prepared to enter into an *energy* buyback agreement may be less than this amount.

3.5.1 Scope

- (a) Clause 3.5 addresses the particular requirements for the *connection* of *Small Inverter Energy Systems* to the *Network Operator's* low voltage network.
- (b) For similarly rated non-Inverter *Energy* systems, the requirements of clause 3.4 for *Small Generators* apply.
- (c) The scope of clause 3.5 is limited to technical conditions of *connection*.

3.5.2 Relevant standards

- (a) The installation of primary *energy* systems shall comply with the relevant *Australian Standards* and international standards.
- (b) Inverter systems shall satisfy the requirements of *Australian Standard AS 4777 "Grid connection of energy systems via inverters"* as published and revised. The following parts of this standard apply:
 - (1) AS 4777.1 – 2005 Part 1 Installation requirements.
 - (2) AS 4777.2 – 2005 Part 2 Inverter requirements.
 - (3) AS 4777.3 – 2005 Part 3 Grid *protection* requirements.
- (c) The term 'Inverter *Energy* system' in these Rules has the same meaning as in *Australian Standard AS 4777*.
- (d) A type-test report or type-test certificate from an independent and recognised certification body showing compliance of inverter *plant* with *Australian Standard AS 4777.2 (2005)* shall be supplied to the *Network Operator*.
- (e) Should it be necessary to *change* any parameter of the equipment as installed and contracted, approval shall be sought from the *Network Operator*. Subsequently, the *Network Operator* shall determine whether a revised application is required.

3.5.3 Metering installation

The *User* shall make provision for import and export *metering* in accordance with the requirements of clause 10.4.

3.5.4 Safety

- (a) Installations shall comply with the relevant *Australian Standards* and all statutory requirements including Australian Standards AS/NZS 3000, AS/NZS 5033 and *Power and Water's* Power Networks Service Rules and Power Networks Installation Rules.
- (b) All electrical installation, commissioning and maintenance work wherever required shall be carried out by an electrical contractor licensed under the *Northern Territory Electrical Workers and Contractors Act*, as in force at 25 November 2011.

3.5.5 Security of operational settings

Where operational settings are applied via a keypad or switches, adequate security shall be employed to prevent tampering or inadvertent/unauthorised *changes* to these settings. A suitable lock or password system shall be used. The *Network Operator* shall approve *changes* to settings prior to implementation.

3.5.6 Circuit arrangements

3.5.6.1 Schematic diagram

A durable single sided schematic-wiring diagram of the installation showing all equipment and switches shall be affixed on the site adjacent the inverter system.

3.5.7 Protection

- (a) A *Small Inverter Energy System* connected to the *network* shall be approved by the *Network Operator* and meet the requirements of relevant standards in accordance with clause 3.5.2 and the following requirements below.
- (b) The *User* shall provide the information required by the *Network Operator* prior to approval being given.

3.5.7.1 Islanding protection

The islanding function shall be automatic and shall physically remove the *Small Inverter Energy System* from the *network*. The *Islanding protection* shall be capable of detecting loss of *supply* from the *network* and *disconnect* the *Small Inverter Energy System* from the *network* within 2 seconds.

3.5.7.2 Synchronising

Connection to the *network* shall be automated. The protective apparatus shall be capable of confirming that the *supply voltage* and *frequency* is within limits for no less than one minute prior to *synchronisation*.

3.5.7.3 Reconnection to network

Reconnection to the *network* shall be automated. The protective apparatus shall be capable of confirming that the *supply voltage* and *frequency* are within limits for no less than one minute prior to *synchronisation*.

3.5.7.4 Overcurrent protection

Overcurrent *protection* shall be provided at the isolating switch of a *Small Inverter Energy System* in accordance with the equipment rating, unless otherwise agreed with the *Network Operator*.

3.5.7.5 Voltage limits

- (a) The Inverter *voltage* limits shall be set according to equipment capability and *Australian Standard AS 4777*.
- (b) The *Small Inverter Energy System* shall remain *connected* for *voltage* variations within the limits of Table 9 unless otherwise agreed with the *Network Operator*. The *network voltage* range is based on 5-minute averages of the RMS value.

Table 9 - Low voltage limits for Small Inverter Energy Systems

Nominal voltage	Lower limit	Upper limit
230 V	226 V	254 V
400 V	390 V	440 V

- (c) The *Network Operator* is not responsible for failure of the *Small Inverter Energy System* to remain *connected* for the full range of *voltage* on the *network* set out in Table 9.

3.5.7.6 Frequency limits

- (a) The Inverter *frequency* limits shall be set according to the equipment capability and *Australian Standard AS 4777*.
- (b) The *Small Inverter Energy System* shall remain *connected* for *frequency* variations between 47.5 Hz and 52 Hz unless otherwise agreed with *Network Operator*.

3.5.8 Commissioning and testing

3.5.8.1 Commissioning

- (a) Commissioning may occur only after the installation of the *metering equipment*.
- (b) In commissioning equipment installed under clause 3.5.8, a *User* shall verify that:
 - (1) The approved schematic has been checked and accurately reflects the installed electrical system.

- (2) All required switches present and operate correctly as per the approved schematic.
 - (3) Signage and labelling comply with that specified in *Power and Water's Service Rules*.
 - (4) The installation is correct and fit for purpose.
 - (5) Operational settings are secure as specified.
 - (6) The islanding *protection* operates correctly and *disconnects* the Inverter *Energy* system from the *network* within 2 seconds.
 - (7) The delay in *reconnection* following restoration of normal *supply* is greater than 1 minute.
- (c) Subsequent modifications to the inverter installation shall be submitted to the *Network Operator* for approval.

3.5.8.2 Re-confirmation of correct operation

- (a) The *Network Operator* may elect to inspect the proposed *Small Inverter Energy System* from *time to time* to ensure continued compliance with these requirements. In the event that the *Network Operator* considers that the installation poses a threat to safety, to *quality of supply* or to the integrity of the *network* it may *disconnect* the generating equipment.
- (c) *Small Inverter Energy System protection systems* shall also be tested for correct functioning at regular intervals not exceeding 5 years. The *User* shall arrange for a suitably qualified person to conduct the tests. Results of tests shall be certified by a competent person and supplied to the *Network Operator*.

3.6 Requirements for *connection of loads*

The following requirements apply to the *connection of loads* to *networks*.

- (a) These requirements and particular provisions may be waived for smaller *Users* and *Users* that have no potential to affect other *Users*, at the discretion of the *Network Operator*.
- (b) Nothing in this clause 3.6 waives the requirements for all installations to comply with the *Network Operator's Service and Installation Rules, Metering Manual, Contractor's Bulletins*, and any requirement included in an *Access Agreement*.

3.6.1 *Connection point for a User*

Connection points between a *User's facility* and a *network* will be defined in the *Access Agreement*.

3.6.2 Information

Before any new or additional equipment is *connected*, the *User* may be required to submit information to the *Network Operator* in accordance with clause 11.

3.6.3 Design standards

Changes to the power system may result in the requirements for connected equipment changing. For example, as additional plant is connected to the power system fault levels will increase and the User's plant may no longer be suitable for connection to the system.

- (a) A User's installation shall comply with the relevant *Australian Standards* as applicable at the *time*, *good electricity industry practice* and this *Code*, including, but not limited to, the *quality of supply* standards as specified in clause 2.4.
- (b) All *plant* ratings shall co-ordinate with the equipment installed on the *Network Operator power system*.
- (c) *Users* will be responsible for ensuring that *plant* capabilities and ratings are monitored on an ongoing basis to ensure continued suitability as conditions on the *power system change*.
- (d) A *User* will be responsible for the cost of any *plant* upgrades required at its facilities as a result of changing *power system* conditions.
- (e) If, after installation of a *User's* facilities, it is found that the installation is adversely affecting:
 - (1) the security or *reliability* of the *power system*;
 - (2) the *quality of supply*; or
 - (3) the installation does not comply with the *Code* or the relevant *Access Agreement*;the *User* shall be responsible for remedying the problem at the *User's* cost, and within a *time* frame reasonably required by the *Network Operator*.

3.6.4 Users' protection systems that impact on power system security

- (a) Where a *User connection* to the *network* may affect *power system security*, the *protection systems* of the *User's connection* shall comply with the requirements of clause 3.2.3.
- (b) *Protection* of the *connection* equipment solely for the *User's* risks is at the *User's* discretion.

3.6.5 Thermal limits

The thermal ratings of the *network* components shall comply with the specifications set out in clause 15.3 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

3.6.6 Fault limits

The calculated fault levels in the *networks* shall not exceed 95% of the equipment fault ratings set out in clause 15.4 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

3.6.7 Power factor requirements

The *power factor* of a *load connection* affects the required capacity of the *network* to *supply* the *load* and the management of *voltage* conditions on the *network*.

Power factor improvement may be achieved by installing additional *reactive plant* or reaching a commercial agreement with the *Network Operator* to install, operate and maintain equivalent *reactive plant* as part of *connection assets*.

- (a) *Power factor* ranges to be met by *Users* for their *loads* are shown in the Table 10.

Table 10 - Power factor requirements (Loads)

Supply Voltage (nominal)	Permissible Power factor Range (half-hour average, unless otherwise specified by the <i>Network Operator</i>)
132 kV / 66 kV	0.95 lagging to unity
<66 kV	0.9 lagging to 0.9 leading

- (b) The *Network Operator* may permit a lower lagging or leading *power factor* where this will not reduce system security and/or *quality of supply*, or require a higher lagging or leading *power factor* to achieve required *power transfers*.
- (c) If the *power factor* falls outside the range in the table over any critical loading period nominated by the *Network Operator*, the *User* shall, where required by the *Network Operator* in order to economically achieve required *power transfer* levels, take action to ensure that the *power factor* falls within range as soon as reasonably practical.
- (d) A *User* who installs *static var compensator* systems for either *power factor* or *quality of supply* requirements shall ensure its *control system* does not interfere with other normal control functions on the *electricity network*. Adequate filtering facilities shall be provided if reasonably required by the *Network Operator* to absorb any excessive harmonic currents.

4 **Power system security**

This section 4 of the *Network Technical Code* establishes requirements relating to the operation of the electricity network (including the operation of the network in emergency situations). It applies to the *Network Operator*, the *Power System Controller* and all network *Users*.

The *Power System Controller* has responsibility for control of the day-to-day dispatch of generators and associated ancillary services and for maintaining power system security.

The following related operational matters are set out in the *System Control Technical Code*:

- (a) operating protocols;
- (b) arrangements for system security and dispatch;
- (c) arrangements for disconnection; and
- (d) any other matters necessary to the efficient operation, monitoring and control of the *power system*.

4.1 **Introduction**

4.1.1 **Purpose and application of clause 4**

- (a) Clause 4 of the *Code* applies to, and defines obligations for all *Users*, including:
 - (1) the framework for achieving and maintaining a secure *power system*;
 - (2) the conditions under which the *Power System Controller* can issue *directions* to *Users* so as to maintain or re-establish a secure *power system*.
- (b) By virtue of this clause 4, the *Power System Controller* has the responsibility to maintain *power system security* within the design and operating limits determined by the *Network Operator*.

4.2 **Power system security principles**

This clause 4.2 sets out certain definitions and concepts that are relevant to *power system security*.

4.2.1 **Power system operating state**

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall define the operating states of the power system in the *System Control Technical Code*:
 - (1) *satisfactory operating state*; and
 - (2) *secure operating state*.
- (b) The definition of operating states in section 4.2.1(a) shall be in accordance with:
 - (1) operating frequency requirements set out in clause 2.2 of this *Code*;

- (2) voltage requirements set out in clause 2.3 of this *Code*;
- (3) current flows for lines and equipment within the ratings defined by the *Network Operator*;
- (4) the *power system* stability requirements set out in clause 2.6; and
- (5) the technical envelope of power system performance set out in clause 4.2.2.

4.2.2 Technical envelope

- (a) The *technical envelope* means the technical boundary limits of the *power system* for achieving and maintaining the *secure operating state* of the *power system* for a given *demand* and *power system* scenario.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall determine and revise the *technical envelope* (as may be necessary from *time to time*) by taking into account the prevailing *power system* and *plant* conditions as described in clause 4.2.2(c).
- (c) The *technical envelope* determination shall take into account matters including but not limited to:
 - (1) the *Network Operator* forecast total *power system load*;
 - (2) the provision of the applicable *contingency capacity reserves*;
 - (3) operation within all *plant* capabilities and *constraints* on the *power system*;
 - (4) *contingency capacity reserves* available to handle *credible contingency events* in accordance with clauses 2.6 and 2.7 of this *Code*;
 - (5) agreed *Generation load constraints*;
 - (6) *constraints* on the *network*, including short term limitations;
 - (7) *frequency* control requirements;
 - (8) *reactive power support* and *ancillary services* requirements; and
 - (9) the existence of proposals for any major equipment or *plant* testing, including the checking of or possible *changes* in *plant* availability.

4.2.3 General principles for maintaining power system security

The *power system security* principles are as follows:

- (a) To the extent practical, the *Power System Controller* shall operate the *power system* such that it is and will remain in a *secure operating state*.
- (b) Following a *credible contingency event* or a *non-credible contingency event*, the *power system* may no longer be in a secure condition on the occurrence of a further *contingency event*. In that case, the *Power System Controller* shall take all reasonable actions to return the *power system* to its *satisfactory operating state* as soon as practical, in accordance with the *System Control Technical Code*.

- (c) The Network Operator shall ensure the provision of adequate *load shedding* facilities initiated automatically by *frequency* or *voltage* conditions outside the normal operating *frequency* or *voltage* excursion band to restore the *power system* to a *satisfactory operating state* following a significant *contingency event*.
- (d) The *Power System Controller* shall ensure adequate *load shedding* facilities are in service to restore the *power system* to a *satisfactory operating state* following a significant *contingency event*.
- (e) A *User* shall be required, either under their *Access Agreement* or *ancillary services agreement*, to provide and maintain all required facilities consistent with both their *Access Agreement* and *good electricity industry practice* and operate their equipment in a manner:
 - (1) to assist in preventing or controlling instability within the *power system*;
 - (2) to assist in the maintenance of, or restoration to a *satisfactory operating state* of the *power system*;
 - (3) to prevent uncontrolled separation of the *transmission network* into isolated *regions* or partly combined *regions*, *intra-regional transmission break-up*, or *cascading outages*, following any *power system* incident; and
 - (4) in accordance with the technical requirements of their *Access Agreement*.
- (f) *Users* shall arrange sufficient black start-up provisions so as to allow the restoration and any necessary restarting of their *Generation Units* following a *black system* condition.

4.3 Power system security obligations and responsibilities

4.3.1 Time for undertaking action

An event which is required under this clause 4 of the *Code* to occur on or by a stipulated *day* shall occur on or by that *day* whether or not a *business day*.

4.3.2 Network Operator

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall use its reasonable endeavours, including through the provision of appropriate information to *Users* to the extent permitted by law and under this *Code*, to ensure that:
 - (1) the *power system*;
 - (2) *network* equipment;
 - (3) *network* connections; and
 - (4) *User* equipment;
 are specified, planned and developed in accordance with *power system security* principles and *good electricity industry practice*.
- (b) Where an obligation is imposed on the *Network Operator* under this clause of the *Code* to arrange or control any act, matter or thing or to ensure that any other person undertakes or refrains from any act, that obligation is limited to

a requirement for the *Network Operator* to use reasonable endeavours, including to give such *directions* as are within its powers, to comply with that obligation.

- (c) If the *Network Operator* fails to arrange or control any act, matter or thing or the acts of any other person notwithstanding the use of the *Network Operator's* reasonable endeavours, the *Network Operator* will not be taken to have breached such obligation.
- (d) The *Network Operator* shall make accessible to *Users* such information as:
 - (1) the *Network Operator* considers appropriate;
 - (2) the *Network Operator* is permitted to disclose in order to assist *Users* to make appropriate market decisions related to open access to the *Network Operator's networks*; and
 - (3) the *Network Operator* is able to disclose to enable *Users* to consider initiating procedures to manage the potential risk of any necessary action by the *Network Operator* to restore or maintain *power system security*.
- (e) In making information available in accordance with clause 4.3.2(d), the *Network Operator* shall use reasonable endeavours to ensure that such information is available to those *Users* who request the information on an equivalent basis.
- (f) In the event that the *Network Operator*, in its reasonable opinion for reasons of safety to the public, the *Network Operator* personnel, *Users'* equipment or the *Network Operator* equipment or for *power system security*, needs to interrupt *supply* to any *User*, the *Network Operator* will (*time permitting*) consult with the relevant *User* prior to executing that interruption.
- (g) The *Network Operator* shall arrange controls, monitoring and secure communication systems which are appropriate in the circumstances to facilitate a manually initiated, rotational *load shedding* and restoration process which may be necessary if there is, in the *Network Operator's* opinion, a prolonged major *power system* disruption.

4.3.3 Power System Controller

The *Power System Controller* shall:

- (a) Take reasonable steps to ensure that high *voltage* switching procedures and arrangements are utilised by *Users* to provide adequate *protection* of the *power system*.
- (b) Assess potential infringement of the *technical envelope* or *power system operating procedures* that could affect the security of the *power system*.
- (c) Operate the *power system* within the limits of the *technical envelope*.

- (d) Operate all *plant* and equipment under its control or co-ordination within the appropriate operational or emergency limits that are either established by the *Network Operator* or advised by the respective *User*.
- (e) Assess the impacts of any technical and operational *constraints* on the operation of the *power system*.
- (f) Monitor the *dispatch* of *Generation Units* and *associated loads* to ensure they stay within both their allowable limits and the dynamic limits of the *technical envelope*.
- (g) Determine any potential *constraint* on the operation of *Generation Units* and *loads* and to assess the effect of this *constraint* on the maintenance of *power system security*.
- (h) Assess the availability and adequacy, including the dynamic response, of *contingency capacity reserves* and *reactive power reserves* in accordance with clause 2 of this Code and to take reasonable steps to ensure that appropriate levels of *contingency capacity reserves* and *reactive power reserves* are available:
 - (1) to ensure the *power system* is, and is maintained, in a *satisfactory operating state*; and
 - (2) to arrest the impacts of a range of significant multiple *contingency events* (affecting up to 90% of the total *power system load*) to allow a prompt restoration or recovery of *power system security*, taking into account *under frequency* or *under voltage* initiated *load shedding* capability provided under *Access Agreements* or as otherwise.
- (i) Make available to *Users* as appropriate, information about the potential for, or the occurrence of, a situation that could significantly impact, or is significantly impacting on *power system security*.
- (j) Refer to other *Users*, as the *Power System Controller* deems appropriate, information of which the *Power System Controller* becomes aware in relation to significant risks to the *power system* where actions to achieve a resolution of those risks are outside the responsibility or control of the *Network Operator*.
- (k) Determine the extent to which the levels of *contingency capacity reserves* and *reactive power reserves* are or were appropriate through appropriate testing, auditing and simulation studies.
- (l) Utilise resources and services provided or procured as *ancillary services* or otherwise to maintain or restore the *satisfactory operating state* of the *power system*.
- (m) Co-ordinate the operation of *black start-up facilities* in response to a partial or total *black system* condition sufficient to re-establish a *satisfactory operating state* of the *power system*.

- (n) Interrupt, subject to this clause 4.3.3, *Users' connections* as necessary during emergency situations to facilitate the re-establishment of the *satisfactory operating state* of the *power system*.
- (o) Direct (as necessary) any *Users* to take action necessary to ensure, maintain or restore the *power system* to a *satisfactory operating state*.
- (p) Co-ordinate and direct any rotation of widespread interruption of *demand* in the event of a major *supply* shortfall or disruption.
- (q) Investigate and review all major *power system* operational incidents and to initiate action plans to manage any abnormal situations or significant deficiencies that could reasonably threaten *power system security*. All *Users* shall co-operate with such action plans at their own cost. Such situations or deficiencies include without limitation:
 - (1) *power system* frequencies outside those specified in the definition of *satisfactory operating state*;
 - (2) *power system voltages* outside those specified in the definition of *satisfactory operating state*;
 - (3) actual or potential *power system* instability; and
 - (4) unplanned/unexpected operation of major *power system* equipment.

4.3.4 Network Users

- (a) All *Users* shall co-operate with and assist the *Power System Controller* in the proper discharge of the *Power System Controller's power system security responsibilities*.
- (b) All *Users* shall operate their facilities and equipment in accordance with any reasonable *direction* given by the *Power System Controller*.
- (c) All *Users* shall provide automatic *interruptible load* of the type described in clause 3.2.8. The level of this automatic *interruptible load* will be a minimum of 75% of their expected *demand*, or such other minimum *interruptible load* level as may be periodically determined by the *Network Operator* in accordance with clause 3.2.8.
- (d) *Users* shall provide their *interruptible load* in manageable blocks spread over a number of steps within *under frequency* bands from 49.25 Hz down to 48.50 Hz as nominated by the *Network Operator*.

4.4 Power system frequency control

4.4.1 Power system frequency control responsibilities

The *Power System Controller* shall use its reasonable endeavours to:

- (a) Control the *power system frequency* and associated *time error* in accordance with clause 2.2; and

- (b) Ensure that the *power system frequency operating standards* set out in clause 2.2.1 of this *Code* are achieved.

4.4.2 Operational *frequency* control requirements

To assist in the effective monitoring of *power system frequency* by the *Power System Controller* the following provisions apply:

- (a) The authority to control and direct the output of all *Generation Units* and *supply to loads* is given to the *Power System Controller* pursuant to clause 9.1.
- (b) Each *User* shall ensure that all of its *Generation Units* have automatic and responsive speed *governor systems* and automatic *load* control schemes in accordance with the requirements of clause 3.3, so as to automatically adjust for *changes* in associated *power demand* or loss of *Generation* as it occurs through response to the resulting excursion in *power system frequency* and *associated load*.
- (c) The *Power System Controller* shall use its reasonable endeavours to arrange to be available and specifically allocated to *regulating duty* such *Generation Facilities* as the *Power System Controller* considers appropriate which can be automatically controlled or directed by the *Power System Controller* to ensure that normal *load* variations do not result in *frequency* deviations outside the limitations specified in clause 2.2.1.
- (d) The *Power System Controller* shall use its reasonable endeavours to arrange *ancillary services* and contractual arrangements associated with the availability, responsiveness and control of necessary *contingency capacity reserve* and the rapid *unloading* of *Generation* as may be reasonably necessary to cater for the impact on the *power system frequency* of potential *power system* disruptions ranging from the *critical single credible contingency event* to the most serious *contingency events*.
- (e) The *Power System Controller* shall use its reasonable endeavours to ensure that adequate facilities are available and are under the *direction* of the *Power System Controller* to allow the managed recovery of the *satisfactory operating state* of the *power system*.

4.5 Control of *network voltages*

4.5.1 *Network voltage control*

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall determine the adequacy of the capacity to produce or absorb *reactive power* in the control of the *network voltages*.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall assess and determine the limits of the operation of the *network* associated with the avoidance of *voltage* failure or collapse under *credible contingency event* scenarios.
- (c) The limits of operation of the *network* shall be translated by the *Network Operator*, into key location operational *voltage* settings or limits, power line capacity limits, *reactive power* production (or absorption) capacity or other

appropriate limits to enable their use by the *Power System Controller* in the maintenance of *power system security*.

- (d) The determination referred to in clause 4.5.1(b) shall include a review of the dynamic stability of the *voltage* of the *transmission network*.
- (e) The *Power System Controller* shall use its reasonable endeavours to maintain *voltage* conditions throughout the *network* in accordance with the technical requirements specified in clause 2.
- (f) The *Network Operator* shall use its reasonable endeavours to arrange the provision of *reactive power* facilities and *power system voltage* stabilising facilities through:
 - (1) contractual arrangements for *ancillary services* with appropriate *Users*;
 - (2) obligations on the part of *Users*; or under their *Access Agreements*;
 - (3) provision of such facilities by the *Network Operator*.
- (g) Without limitation, such *reactive power* facilities may include:
 - (1) *synchronous Generator voltage controls* usually associated with *tap-changing transformers*; or *Generator AVR* set point control (rotor current adjustment);
 - (2) *synchronous condensers* (compensators);
 - (3) *static var compensators* (SVC);
 - (4) shunt capacitors;
 - (5) shunt *reactors*;
 - (6) series capacitors.

4.5.2 Reactive power reserve requirements

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall use its reasonable endeavours to ensure that sufficient *reactive power reserve* is available at all times to maintain or restore the *power system* to a *satisfactory operating state* after the most critical *contingency event* as determined by previous analysis or by periodic contingency analysis by the *Power System Controller*.
- (b) If *voltages* fall outside acceptable limits, and the means of *voltage control* set out in this clause 4.5.2 are exhausted, the *Power System Controller* shall take all reasonable actions, including to direct *changes* to *demand* (through selective *load shedding* from the *power system*), additional *Generation* operation or reduction in the *transmission line* flows but only to the extent necessary to restore the *voltages* to within the relevant limits.
- (c) A *User* shall comply with any *direction* made by the *Power System Controller* under this clause 4.5.2.

4.6 Power system operating procedures

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall be responsible for developing and maintaining *power system operating procedures* including, but not limited to:
 - (1) basic electrical safety requirements;
 - (2) electrical safety instructions;
 - (3) general operating/field procedures; and
 - (4) station-specific procedures related to the operation of the power system in that station.
- (b) The nature and effect of the *power system operating procedures* shall be set out in the *System Control Technical Code*.

4.6.1 Network operations

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall conduct or direct operations on the *network* in accordance with the appropriate *power system operating procedures*, the *System Control Technical Code* and *good electricity industry practice*.
- (b) *Users* shall operate their equipment interfacing with the *network* in accordance with the requirements of:
 - (1) this *Code*;
 - (2) any applicable *Access Agreement* or *ancillary services agreement*;
 - (3) the requirements of the *System Control Technical Code* and the *Network Operator's Electrical Safety Manual*; and
 - (4) the relevant *power system operating procedures*.
- (c) *Users* shall ensure that *network* operations performed on their behalf are undertaken by competent persons.

4.6.2 Switching of reactive power facilities

- (a) The *Power System Controller* may instruct a *User* to place reactive facilities belonging to or controlled by that *User* into or out of service for the purposes of maintaining *power system security* where prior arrangements concerning these matters have been made between the *Network Operator* and a *User*.
- (b) Without limitation to its obligations under such prior arrangements, a *User* shall use reasonable endeavours to comply with such an instruction given by the *Network Operator* or its authorised agent.

4.6.3 Generation limits

Limits to the VAr *Generation* and absorption capability of *Generation Facilities* and reactive compensation *plant* such as *static var compensators* are not to be exceeded.

4.7 Power system security operations

4.7.1 Users' advice

A *User* shall promptly advise the *Power System Controller* at the *time* that the *User* becomes aware of any circumstance that could be expected to adversely affect the secure operation of the *power system* or any equipment owned or under the control of the *User*.

4.7.2 Protection or control system abnormality

- (a) If a *User* becomes aware that any relevant *protection* or *control system* is defective or unavailable for service, that *User* shall advise the *Power System Controller* in accordance with the requirements of the *System Control Technical Code*.
- (b) If the *Power System Controller* considers the unavailability of the *protection system* in 4.7.2(a) to be a threat to *power system security*, the *Power System Controller* may direct that the equipment protected or operated by the relevant *protection* or *control system* be taken out of operation or operated as the *Power System Controller* directs.
- (c) A *User* shall comply with a *direction* given by the *Power System Controller* under clause 4.7.2(b) at no cost to the *Power System Controller*.

4.7.3 Power System Controller advice on power system emergency conditions

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall advise affected or potentially affected *Users* of all relevant details promptly after the *Power System Controller* becomes aware of any circumstance with respect to the *power system* which, in the reasonable opinion of the *Power System Controller* could be expected to materially adversely affect *supply* to or from *Users*.
- (b) Without limitation, such circumstances may include:
 - (1) electricity capacity shortfall, being a condition where there are insufficient *network* or *supply* options available to enable the secure *supply* of the total *load* in a *region*;
 - (2) unexpected disruption of *power system security*, which may occur when:
 - (iv) an unanticipated major *power system contingency event* occurs;
or
 - (v) significant environmental or similar conditions, including weather, storms or fires, are likely to, or are affecting the *power system*; or
 - (3) a *black system* condition.

4.7.4 Managing a *power system contingency event*

- (a) During the period when the *power system* is affected by a *contingency event* the *Power System Controller* shall carry out actions, in accordance with the guidelines set out in this *Code and the System Control Technical Code* to:
 - (1) identify the impact of the *contingency event* on *power system security* in terms of the capability of the *network*;
 - (2) identify and implement the actions required in each affected *region* to restore the *power system* to its *satisfactory operating state*.
- (b) When *contingency events* lead to potential or actual electricity *supply* shortfall events, the *Power System Controller* shall follow the procedures outlined in clause 4.7.

4.7.5 Managing electricity *supply* shortfall events

- (a) If, at any *time*, there are insufficient *supply* options available to securely *supply* total *load* in a *region*, then, the *Power System Controller* may undertake all or any of the following:
 - (1) recall of equipment *outages*;
 - (2) *disconnect* one or more points of *load connection* as the *Power System Controller* considers necessary;
 - (3) direct a *User* to take such steps as are reasonable to immediately reduce its *load*.
- (b) A *User* shall use all reasonable endeavours to comply with a notice given under clause 4.7.5(a)(3).
- (c) If there is a major *supply* shortfall, the *Power System Controller* shall implement, to the extent practical, a sharing of *load shedding* across *interconnected regions* up to the *power transfer capability* of the *network*.

4.7.6 Directions by the *Power System Controller* affecting *power system security*

Subject to the *Power System Controller* giving a *User* a reasonable period of *time* to take appropriate action:

- (a) The *Power System Controller* may give reasonable *directions* to any *User* in accordance with the provisions of the *System Control Technical Code* requiring the *User* to do any act or thing which the *Network Operator* considers reasonably necessary to ensure the security of the power system.
- (b) A *User* shall use all reasonable endeavours to comply within a reasonable period of *time* with any such *directions* given to it by the *Network Operator*. If a *User* does not comply with a *direction* within a reasonable period of *time* and as such a *satisfactory operating state* cannot be re-established, the *Network Operator* may *disconnect* the *User* without further recourse.

4.7.7 Disconnection of Generation Units and/or associated loads

- (a) Where, under this *Code* or the relevant *Access Agreement* the *Power System Controller* has the authority or responsibility to *disconnect* either a *Generation Unit* or its *associated load*, then it may do so (either directly or through any agent) as described in clause 8.
- (b) The relevant *User* and *associated load* shall provide all reasonable assistance to the *Network Operator* for the purpose of such *disconnection*.

4.7.8 Emergency black start-up facilities

Generator Users shall ensure they have sufficient facilities available and operable for their own black start-up requirements.

4.7.9 Black system procedures

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall develop *system black procedures* and set these procedures out in the *System Control Technical Code*.
- (b) A *Generator User* shall develop the draft *black system procedures* for each of its *power stations* in accordance with the requirements of the *System Control Technical Code*.
- (c) The *Power System Controller* may request amendments to a *User's* draft *black system procedures* or any proposed *changes* as the *Power System Controller* reasonably considers necessary by notice in writing to the *User*, where use is to be made of the *network*.
- (d) If the *Power System Controller* and a *User* are unable to agree on the amendments, the matter may be dealt with under the dispute resolution process described in clause 1.6.

4.7.10 Black system start-up

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall advise a *User* if, in the *Power System Controller's* reasonable opinion, there is a *black system* condition which is affecting, or which may affect, that *User*.
- (b) If a *User* is providing *black start-up facilities* under an *ancillary services agreement* with another *User*, then the *local black system procedures* for that *User* shall be consistent with this *Code* and their *Access Agreement*.
- (c) The *Power System Controller* may by notice in writing to the relevant *User* require such amendments to the *local black system procedures* for a *User* which, in its reasonable opinion, are needed for consistency with:
 - (1) actual *power system* requirements; or
 - (2) if the *User* is providing *black start-up facilities* to another *User* under an *ancillary services agreement*, the relevant *Access Agreement*.
- (d) If the *Power System Controller* advises a *User* of a *black system* condition, and/or if the terms of the relevant *local black system procedures* require the

User to take action, then the *User* shall comply with the agreed requirements of the *local black system procedures*.

- (e) If there is a *black system* condition, then a *User/Customer* shall comply with the *Power System Controller's* instructions with respect to the timing and magnitude of *load* restoration, as well as subsequent *load* movements or *disconnections*.

4.7.11 Review of operating incidents

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall conduct reviews of significant operating incidents or deviations from normal operating conditions in order to assess the adequacy of the provision and response of facilities or services, and the appropriateness of actions taken to restore or maintain *power system security*.
- (b) For all cases where the *Power System Controller* has been responsible for the *disconnection* of a *User*, the *Power System Controller* shall provide a report of the review carried out to the *User* advising of the circumstances requiring that action.
- (c) A *User* shall co-operate in any such review conducted by the *Power System Controller* (including making available relevant records and information).
- (d) A *User* shall provide to the *Power System Controller* such information relating to the performance of its equipment during and after particular *power system* incidents or operating condition deviations as the *Power System Controller* reasonably requires for the purposes of analysing or reporting on those *power system* incidents or operating condition deviations.
- (e) The *Power System Controller* shall provide to a *User* such information or reports relating to the performance of that *User's* equipment during *power system* incidents or operating condition deviations as that *User* reasonably requests and in relation to which the *Power System Controller* is required to conduct a review under this clause.

4.8 Power system security support

4.8.1 Remote control and monitoring devices

- (a) All remote control, operational *metering* and monitoring devices and local circuits as described in clause 3, shall be installed and maintained by a *User* in accordance with the standards and protocols determined and advised by the *Power System Controller* (for use in the *Power System Controller's control centre*) for each:
 - (1) *Generation Unit* and *associated load* connected to the *network*;
 - (2) *zone substation* connected to the *network*; and
 - (3) *ancillary service* provided by that *User*.
- (b) The provider of any *ancillary services* shall arrange the installation and maintenance of all remote control equipment and *remote monitoring*

equipment in accordance with the standards and protocols determined by the *Power System Controller* for use in the *Power System Controller's control centre*.

- (c) The controls and monitoring devices shall include the provision for indication of *active power* and *reactive power* output, and to signal the status and any associated alarm condition relevant to achieving adequate *protection* control and indication of the *network*, and the *User's plant* active and reactive output consumption.

4.8.2 Operational control and indication communication facilities

In accordance with clauses 3.3.3.1, 3.3.3.2 and 3.3.3.3, as applicable, Each *User* shall provide and maintain the necessary primary and, where nominated by the *Network Operator*, back-up communications facilities for control, operational *metering* and indication from the relevant local sites to the appropriate interfacing termination as nominated by the *Network Operator*.

4.8.3 Power system voice/data operational communication facilities

- (a) The *Power System Controller* shall establish:
 - (1) procedures for written and oral communications on operational matters; and
 - (2) minimum telecommunications facilities to be provided by *Users*; in the *System Control Technical Code*.
- (b) *Each User* shall advise the *Power System Controller* of each nominated position for the purposes of giving or receiving *operational communications* in relation to each of its facilities in accordance with the requirements of the *System Control Technical Code*.
- (c) *Each User* shall provide, for each nominated position, communication systems in accordance with the requirements of the *System Control Technical Code*.
- (d) *Each User* shall maintain communication systems in good repair and shall investigate faults within 4 hours, or as otherwise agreed with the *Power System Controller*, of a fault being identified and shall repair or procure the repair of faults promptly.
- (e) The *Power System Controller* shall advise all *Users* of nominated persons for the purposes of giving or receiving *operational communications* in accordance with the requirements of the *System Control Technical Code*.

4.8.4 Records of power system operational communication

The *Power System Controller* shall establish the procedures for recording *power system operational communications* in the *System Control Technical Code*.

4.8.5 Agent communications

- (a) A *User* may appoint an agent (called a “*User Agent*”) to coordinate operations of one or more of its facilities on its behalf, but only with the prior written consent of the *Power System Controller*.
- (b) A *User* who has appointed a *User Agent* may replace that *User Agent* but only with the prior written advice to and consent of the *Power System Controller*.
- (c) The *Power System Controller* may only withhold its consent to the appointment of a *User Agent* under clause 4.8.5(a), if it reasonably believes that the relevant person is not suitably qualified or experienced to operate the relevant *facility* at the interface with a *network*.
- (d) For the purposes of this *Code* and any applicable *Access Agreement* acts or omissions of a *User Agent* are deemed to be acts or omissions of the relevant *User*.
- (e) The *Power System Controller* and its *representatives* (including authorised agents) may:
 - (1) rely upon any communications given by a *User Agent* as being given by the relevant *User*; and
 - (2) rely upon any communications given to a *User Agent* as having been given to the relevant *User*.
- (f) The *Power System Controller* is not required to consider whether any instruction has been given to a *User Agent* by the relevant *User* or the terms of those instructions.

4.9 Nomenclature standards

- (a) The Network Operator shall establish nomenclature standards for network equipment;
- (b) A *User* shall use the *nomenclature standards* for *network* equipment and apparatus as agreed with the *Network Operator* or failing agreement, as determined by the *Network Operator*.
- (c) A *User* shall use reasonable endeavours to ensure that its *representatives* comply with the *nomenclature standards* in any *operational communications* with the *Power System Controller*.
- (d) A *User* shall ensure that name plates on its equipment relevant to operations at any point within the *power system* conform to the requirements set out in the *nomenclature standards*.
- (e) A *User* shall use reasonable endeavours to ensure that nameplates on its equipment relevant to operations within the *power system* are maintained to ensure easy and accurate identification of equipment.

- (f) A *User* shall ensure that technical drawings and documentation provided to the *Network Operator* comply with the *nomenclature standards*.
- (g) The *Network Operator* may, by notice in writing, request a *User* to *change* the existing numbering or nomenclature of *network* equipment and apparatus of the *User* for purposes of uniformity, and the *User* shall comply with such request provided that if the existing numbering or nomenclature conforms with the *nomenclature standards*, the *Network Operator* shall pay all reasonable costs incurred in complying with the request.
- (h) All nomenclature shall be unique and unambiguous.

5 Testing of *plant* and equipment

The testing of *plant* and equipment is required before *connection* to the *network* and periodically thereafter to ensure that the *network* and *connections* can continue to operate within the parameters of the *network* performance standards set out in clause 2 and that equipment meets the requirements to be *connected* to the *network* set out in clause 3.

5.1 Obligations to test *plant* or equipment

5.1.1 *Network Operator* obligations

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall arrange, co-ordinate and supervise the conduct of such appropriate tests as may be necessary to ensure that:
 - (1) the equipment at new *connections* to the *network* meets the requirements set out in clause 3.
 - (2) the *protection* of the *network* is adequate to protect against damage to *power system plant* and equipment. Such tests shall be performed according to the requirements of clause 5.2.
 - (3) the *power system* capability and performance is adequate to meet forecast operating conditions and power flows, as set out in clause 5.5.
 - (4) adequate *reactive power* devices are provided and available to control and maintain *power system voltages* under both *satisfactory operating state* and *contingency event* conditions;
 - (5) adequate devices are installed and available to maintain *power system* stability.
 - (6) *Users* continue to comply with the conditions set out in *Access Agreements* and that all *Users' connection* equipment meets the requirements to set out in clause 3 and 5.4.
 - (7) the testing of *metering* installations is carried out in accordance with clause 10.6

5.1.2 *Network Users' obligations*

- (a) All *network Users* shall cooperate to permit the testing of their *connection* equipment as required under clause 5.1.1.
- (b) A *Generator* shall provide evidence that each *Generation Unit* complies with the technical requirements of clause 3.3 and the relevant *Access Agreement* as required by clause 5.4

5.2 Routine testing of *protection* equipment

- (a) Subject to clause 3.2.3.10, a *User* shall cooperate with the *Network Operator* to test the operation of equipment forming part of a *protection scheme* relating to a *connection point* at which that *User* is *connected* to a *network* and the *User* shall conduct these tests:
 - (1) prior to the *plant* at the relevant *connection point* being placed in service; and
 - (2) at intervals specified in the *Access Agreement* or in accordance with an asset management plan agreed between the *Network Operator* and the *User*.
- (b) A *User* shall, on request from the *Network Operator*, demonstrate to the *Network Operator's* satisfaction the correct calibration and operation of the *User's* protective devices.
- (c) Each *User* shall pay the *Network Operator's* reasonable costs and shall bear its own costs of conducting tests under this clause 5.2.

5.3 Testing by *Users* of their own *plant* requiring *changes* to agreed operation

- (a) A *User* proposing to conduct a test on equipment related to a *connection point*, which requires a *change* to the operation of that equipment as specified in the *Access Agreement*, shall give notice in writing to the *Network Operator* of at least 15 *business days* except in an emergency.
- (b) The notice to be provided under clause 5.3(a) is to include:
 - (1) the nature of the proposed test;
 - (2) the estimated, start and finish *time* for the proposed test;
 - (3) the identity of the equipment to be tested;
 - (4) the *power system* conditions required for the conduct of the proposed test;
 - (5) details of any potential adverse consequences of the proposed test on the equipment to be tested;
 - (6) details of any potential adverse consequences of the proposed test on the *power system*; and
 - (7) the name of the person responsible for the coordination of the proposed test on behalf of the *Users*.
- (c) The *Network Operator* shall review the proposed test to determine whether the test:
 - (1) could adversely affect the normal operation of the *power system*;
 - (2) could cause a threat to *power system security*;
 - (3) requires the *power system* to be operated in a particular way which differs from the way in which the *power system* is normally operated; or

- (4) could affect the normal *metering of energy at a connection point*;
- (d) If, in the *Network Operator's* reasonable opinion, a test could threaten public safety, damage or threaten to damage equipment or adversely affect the operation of the *power system*, the *Network Operator* may direct that the proposed test procedure be modified or that the test not be conducted at the *time* proposed.
- (e) The *Network Operator* shall advise any other *User* who will be adversely affected by a proposed test and consider any reasonable requirements of those *Users* when approving the proposed test.
- (f) The *User* who conducts a test under this clause 5.3 shall ensure that the person responsible for the coordination of a test promptly advises *Network Operator* when the test is complete.
- (g) If the *Network Operator* approves a proposed test, the *Network Operator* shall use its reasonable endeavours to ensure that *power system* conditions reasonably required for that test are provided as close as is reasonably practical to the proposed start *time* of the test and continue for the proposed duration of the test.
- (h) Within a reasonable period after any such test has been conducted, the *User* who has conducted a test under this clause 5.3 shall provide the *Network Operator* with a report in relation to that test including test results where appropriate.

5.4 Tests to demonstrate *Generator* compliance

- (a) Each *User* shall provide evidence to the *Network Operator* that each of its *Generation Units* complies with the technical requirements of clause 3.3.2 and the relevant *Access Agreement*.
- (b) Each *User* shall provide facilities to carry out *power system* tests prior to commercial operation in order to verify acceptable performance of each *Generation Unit*, and provide information and data necessary for computer model validation. These test requirements are detailed in Attachment 5.
- (c) Other tests, if reasonably necessary, may be specified by the *Network Operator*, and *Users* will be advised accordingly.
- (d) Each *User* shall negotiate in good faith with the *Network Operator* to agree on a compliance monitoring program, including an agreed method, for each of its *Generation Units* to confirm ongoing compliance with the applicable technical requirements of clause 3.3.2 and the relevant *Access Agreement*.
- (e) If a performance test or monitoring of in-service performance demonstrates that a *Generation Unit* is not complying with one or more technical requirements of clause 3.3.2 and the relevant *Access Agreement* then the *User* shall:
 - (1) promptly notify the *Network Operator* of that fact; and

- (2) promptly advise the *Network Operator* of the remedial steps it proposes to take and the *timetable* for such remedial work; and
 - (3) diligently undertake such remedial work and report at *monthly* intervals to the *Network Operator* on progress in implementing the remedial action; and
 - (4) conduct further tests or monitoring on completion of the remedial work to confirm compliance with the relevant technical requirement.
- (f) From the *Code commencement date* or from the date of access, whichever is the later, Each *User* shall maintain records and retain them for a minimum of 7 years (from the date of creation of each record) for each of its *Generation Units* and *power stations* setting out details of the results of all technical performance and monitoring conducted under this clause 5.4 and make these records available to *Network Operator* on request.

5.4.1 Tests of *Generation Units* requiring changes to agreed operation

- (a) The *Network Operator* may, at intervals of not less than 12 *months* per *Generation Unit*, require the testing by a *User* of any *Generation Unit* connected to the *network* of the *Network Operator* in order to determine analytic parameters for modelling purposes or to assess the performance of the relevant *Generation Unit*. The *Network Operator* is entitled to witness such tests and the *Network Operator* shall have reasonable grounds for requiring such tests.
- (b) Adequate notice of not less than 15 *business days* shall be given by the *Network Operator* to the *User* before the proposed date of a test under clause 5.4.1(a).
- (c) The *Network Operator* shall use its reasonable endeavours to ensure that tests permitted under this clause 5.4.1 are to be conducted at a *time* which will minimise the departure from the *commitment* that is due to take place at that *time*.
- (d) If not possible beforehand, a *User* shall conduct a test under this clause 5.4.1 at the next scheduled *outage* of the relevant *Generation Unit* and in any event within 9 *months* of the request.
- (e) A *User* shall provide any reasonable assistance requested by the *Network Operator* in relation to the conduct of tests.
- (f) Tests conducted under this clause 5.4.1 shall be conducted in accordance with test procedures agreed between the *Network Operator* and the relevant *User*, who shall not unreasonably withhold agreement to the test procedures proposed for this purpose by the *Network Operator*.
- (g) The *Network Operator* shall provide to a *User* such details of the analytic parameters of the model derived from the tests referred to in this clause 5.4.1 for any of that *User's Generation Units* as may reasonably be requested by the *User*.

- (h) Each *User* shall bear its own costs associated with tests conducted under this clause 5.4.1 and no compensation is to be payable for financial losses incurred as a result of these tests or associated activities.

5.5 **Power system tests**

- (a) Tests conducted for the purpose of either verifying the magnitude of the *power transfer capability of networks* or investigating *power system* performance shall be coordinated and approved by the *Network Operator*. The *Network Operator* or a *User* requesting such tests shall have reasonable grounds for requiring such tests.
- (b) The tests described in clause 5.5(a) may be conducted whenever:
 - (1) a new *Generation Unit* or *facility* of a *Customer, User* or a *network* development is commissioned that is calculated or anticipated to substantially alter *power transfer capability* through the *network*;
 - (2) setting *changes* are made to any *governor system* and *excitation control system*, including *power system stabilisers*; or
 - (3) a test is required to verify the performance of the *power system* or to validate computer models.
- (c) The *Network Operator* shall notify all *Users* who could reasonably be expected to be affected by the proposed test at least 15 *business days* before any test under this clause 5.5 may proceed and to consider any reasonable requirements of those *Users* when approving the proposed test.
- (d) Operational conditions for each test shall be arranged by the *Network Operator* and the test procedures shall be coordinated by an officer nominated by the *Network Operator* who has authority to stop the test or any part of it or vary the procedure within pre-approved guidelines if it considers any of these actions to be reasonably necessary.
- (e) Each *User* shall cooperate with the *Network Operator* when required in planning, preparing for and conducting *network* tests to assess the technical performance of the *networks* and if necessary conduct co-ordinated activities to prepare for *power system* wide testing or individual, on-site tests of the *User's* facilities or *plant*, including *disconnection* of a *Generation Unit*.
- (f) The *Network Operator* may direct operation of *Generation Units* by *Users* during *power system* tests if this is necessary to achieve operational conditions on the *networks* that are reasonably required to achieve valid test results.
- (g) The *Network Operator* shall plan the timing of tests so that the variation from *dispatch* that would otherwise occur is minimised and the duration of the tests is as short as possible consistent with test requirements and *power system security*.

- (h) Each *User* is to bear its own costs of conducting tests under this clause 5.5 and no compensation is to be payable for financial losses incurred as a result of these tests or associated activities.
- (i) If the *Network Operator* has initiated the tests as part of a series of periodic *power system* performance assessment studies, then the costs of the studies will be borne by the *Network Operator*. If the tests demonstrate the need for a *User* to install additional equipment in order to maintain or enhance *power system* performance in accordance with this *Code*, then the *User* will be responsible for the cost of installing the additional equipment.

5.6 Compliance with the *Network Technical Code*

5.6.1 Right of inspection and testing

- (a) If the *Network Operator* has reasonable grounds to believe that equipment owned or operated by a *User* may not comply with this *Code* or the *Access Agreement*, the *Network Operator* may require testing of the relevant equipment by giving notice in writing to the *User*.
- (b) If a notice is given under clause 5.6.1(a) the relevant test is to be conducted at a *time* agreed by the *Network Operator*.
- (c) The *User* who receives a notice under clause 5.6.1(a) shall co-operate in relation to conducting tests requested under clause 5.6.1(a).
- (d) The cost of tests requested under clause 5.6.1(a) shall be borne by the *Network Operator*, unless the equipment is determined by the tests not to comply with the relevant *Access Agreement*, and/or this *Code* in which case all reasonable costs of such tests shall be borne by the owner of that equipment.
- (e) Tests conducted in respect of a *connection point* under this clause 5.6.1 shall be conducted using test procedures agreed between the relevant *User*, which agreement is not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed.
- (f) Tests under this clause 5.6.1 shall be conducted only by persons with the relevant skills and experience.
- (g) If the *Network Operator* requests a test under this clause 5.6.1, the *Network Operator* may appoint a *representative* to witness a test and the relevant *User* shall permit a *representative* appointed under this clause 5.6.1(g) to be present while the test is being conducted.
- (h) Subject to clause 5.6.1(i), a *User* who conducts a test shall submit a report to the *Network Operator* within a reasonable period after the completion of the test and the report is to outline relevant details of the tests conducted, including but not limited to the results of those tests.

- (i) If a performance test or monitoring of in-service performance demonstrates that equipment owned or operated by a *User* does not comply with this *Code* or the relevant *Access Agreement* then the *User* shall:
 - (1) promptly notify the *Network Operator* of that fact; and
 - (2) promptly advise the *Network Operator* of the remedial steps it proposes to take and the *timetable* for such remedial work; and
 - (3) diligently undertake such remedial work and report at *monthly* intervals to the *Network Operator* on progress in implementing the remedial action; and
 - (4) conduct further tests or monitoring on completion of the remedial work to confirm compliance with the relevant technical requirement.
- (j) The *Network Operator* may attach test equipment or *monitoring equipment* to *plant* owned by a *User* or require a *User* to attach such test equipment or *monitoring equipment*, subject to the provisions of clause 5.7.1 regarding entry and inspection.
- (k) In carrying out monitoring under clause 5.6.1(j), the *Network Operator* shall not cause the performance of the monitored *plant* to be *constrained* in any way.

5.6.2 Generator compliance with the Code

- (a) If the *Network Operator* reasonably believes that a *Generator* is not complying with one or more technical requirements of clause 3.3.2 and the relevant *Access Agreement*, the *Network Operator* may instruct the *User* to conduct tests within 25 *business days* to demonstrate that the relevant *Generation Unit* complies with those technical requirements.
- (b) If the tests provide evidence that the relevant *Generation Unit* continues to comply with the technical requirement(s) *Network Operator* shall reimburse the *User* for the reasonable expenses incurred as a direct result of conducting the tests.
- (c) If the *Network Operator*:
 - (1) is satisfied that a *Generation Unit* does not comply with one or more technical requirements; and
 - (2) does not have evidence demonstrating that a *Generation Unit* complies with the technical requirements set out in clause 3.3; or
 - (3) holds the reasonable opinion that there is or could be a threat to *power system security*,

the *Network Operator* may direct the relevant *User* to operate the relevant *Generation Unit* at a particular *generated* output or in a particular mode until the relevant *User* submits evidence reasonably satisfactory to the *Network Operator* that the *Generation Unit* is complying with the relevant technical requirement.

(d) A *direction* under clause 5.6.2(c) shall be recorded by the *Network Operator*.

5.7 Inspection of *plant* and equipment

5.7.1 Right of entry and inspection

- (a) The *Network Operator* or any of its *representatives* (including authorised agents) may, in accordance with this clause 5.7.1, inspect a *facility* of a *User* and the operation and maintenance of that *facility* in order to:
- (1) assess compliance by the relevant *User* with its operational obligations under this *Code*, or an *Access Agreement*, or an *ancillary services agreement*; or
 - (2) investigate any possible past or potential threat to *power system security*; or
 - (3) conduct any periodic familiarisation or training associated with the operational requirements of the *facility*.
- (b) If the *Network Operator* wishes to inspect the facilities of a *User* under clause 5.7.1(a), the *Network Operator* shall give that *User* at least 2 *business days'* notice in writing of its intention to carry out an inspection. In the case of an emergency condition affecting the *power system* which the *Network Operator* reasonably considers requires access to the *User's facility*, prior notice is not required, however, the *Network Operator* shall notify the *User* as soon as practical after deciding to enter the *User's facility* of the nature and extent of the *Network Operator's* activities at the *User's facility*.
- (c) A notice given under clause 5.7.1 (b) shall include the following information:
- (1) the name of the *representative* who will be conducting the inspection on behalf of the *Network Operator*;
 - (2) subject to clause 5.7.1(h), the *time* when the inspection will commence and the expected *time* when the inspection will conclude; and
 - (3) if associated with clause 5.7.1(a)(1) then the nature of the suspected non-compliance with the *Code* or *Access Agreement* or *ancillary services agreement*, or if associated with clauses 5.7.1(a)(2) or 5.7.1(a)(3) then the relevant reasons for the inspection.
- (d) The *Network Operator* may not carry out an inspection under clause 5.7.1 within 6 *months* of any previous inspection except for the purpose of verifying the performance of corrective action claimed to have been carried out in respect of a non-conformance observed and documented on the previous inspection or for the purpose of investigating an operating incident in accordance with clause 4.7.11.
- (e) At any *time* when the *representative* of the *Network Operator* is in a *Users' facility*, that *representative* shall:
- (1) cause no damage to the *facility*;

- (2) only interfere with the operation of the *facility* to the extent reasonably necessary and approved by the relevant *User* (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed);
 - (3) observe “permit to test” access to sites and clearance protocols of the operator of the *facility*, provided that these are not used by the *facility* solely to delay the granting of access to site and inspection;
 - (4) observe the requirements of the operator of the *facility* in relation to occupational health and safety and industrial relations matters, which requirements are of general application to all invitees entering on or into the *facility*, provided that these are not used by the *facility* solely to delay the granting of access to site and inspection; and
 - (5) not ask any question other than as reasonably necessary for the purpose of such inspection or give any *direction*, instruction or advice to any person involved in the operation or maintenance of the *facility* other than the operator of the *facility* or unless approved by the operator of the *facility*.
- (f) Any *representative* of the *Network Operator* conducting an inspection under this clause 5.7.1 shall be appropriately qualified and experienced to perform the relevant inspection. If so requested by the *User*, the *Network Operator* shall procure that a *representative* of *Network Operator* (other than an employee) gaining access under this *Code* or an Access Agreement enters into a confidentiality undertaking in favour of the *User* in a form reasonably acceptable to the *User* prior to gaining such access.
 - (g) The costs of inspections under this clause 5.7.1 shall be borne by the *User* if the suspected non-compliance is later proved by tests.
 - (h) Any inspection under clause 5.7.1(a) shall not take longer than one *day* unless the *Network Operator* seeks approval from the *User* for an *extension of time* (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).
 - (i) Any equipment or goods installed or left on land or in premises of a *User* after an inspection conducted under this clause 5.7.1 do not become the property of the relevant *User* (notwithstanding that they may be annexed or affixed to the relevant land or premises).
 - (j) In respect of any equipment or goods left on land or premises of a *User* during or after an inspection, a *User*:
 - (1) shall not use any such equipment or goods for a purpose other than as contemplated in this *Code* without the prior written approval of the owner of the equipment or goods;
 - (2) shall allow the owner of any such equipment or goods to remove any such equipment or goods in whole or in part at a *time* agreed with the relevant *User* with such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed;

- (3) shall not create or cause to be created any mortgage, charge or lien over any such equipment or goods; and
- (4) shall reimburse the owner of any such equipment or goods for reasonable costs and expenses suffered or incurred by the owner due to loss or damage to any such equipment or goods caused by the *User*.

6 Control and *protection* settings

6.1 *Protection of power system equipment*

It is important to note that the requirements of this clause 6 are designed to adequately protect the *Network Operator's power system*. The requirements are not necessarily adequate to protect *Users' plant* and equipment.

6.1.1 Scope

- (a) The requirements of clause 6.1 apply only to a *User's protection*, which is necessary to maintain *power system security*.
- (b) *Users' protection schemes* shall be located on *Users' equipment*.
- (c) *Protection* installed solely to cover risks associated with a *User's plant* and equipment is at the *User's* discretion.
- (d) The extent of a *User's plant* and equipment that will need to conform to the requirements of clause 6.1 will vary from installation to installation.
- (e) The *Network Operator* will assess each *User's* installation individually. *Users* will be advised accordingly.

6.1.2 *Power system fault levels*

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall determine the fault levels at all *busbars* of the *Network Operator's network* as described in clause 6.1.2(b);
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall ensure that there is information available about the *network* that will allow the determination of fault levels for normal operation of the *power system*. The *Network Operator* will make available on request the *credible contingency events* which the *Network Operator* considers may affect the configuration of the *power system* so that the *Network Operator* and *Users* can identify their *busbars* which could potentially be exposed to a fault level which exceeds the fault *current ratings* of the circuit breakers and other equipment associated with that *busbar*.

6.1.3 *Power system protection co-ordination*

The *Network Operator* shall use its reasonable endeavours to co-ordinate the *protection settings* for equipment *connected* to the *network*. *Users* with *protection systems* that impact *power system security* and *reliability* shall ensure their settings co-ordinate with the *Network Operator's protection*. Such *Users* may not adjust settings without the *Network Operator's* approval. Specific requirements are described in clauses 6.1.6.4 and 11.2.2.

6.1.4 *Short-term thermal ratings of the power system*

- (a) The *Network Operator* may act so as to use, or require or recommend actions which use the full extent of the thermal ratings of *network* elements to maintain *power system security*, including the short-term ratings (being *time dependent ratings*), as defined by the *Network Operator* from *time to time*.

- (b) The *Power System Controller* shall use its reasonable endeavours not to exceed the *network* element ratings and not to require or recommend action that causes those ratings to be exceeded.

6.1.5 Availability of *protection*

- (a) All elements of *protection schemes*, including *backup protection* and associated intertripping, shall be maintained so as to be available for service at all *times*.
- (b) For maintenance or repair purposes, one *protection scheme* forming part of a *protection system* can be taken out of service for period of up to 24 hours every 6 *months*.
- (c) At the discretion of the *Network Controller*, longer periods of unavailability may require the associated *primary plant* to be taken out of service in accordance with clause 6.1.6.
- (d) Except in an emergency, a *User* shall notify the *Network Operator* at least 5 *business days* prior to taking a *protection scheme* out of service.

6.1.6 Partial *outage* of power *protection systems*

- (a) Where there is an *outage* of one *protection* of a *network* element, the *Power System Controller* shall determine, the most appropriate action. Depending on the circumstances the determination may be:
 - (1) to leave the *network* element in service for a limited duration;
 - (2) to take the *network* element out of service immediately;
 - (3) to install or direct installation of a temporary *protection*;
 - (4) to accept a degraded performance from the *protection*, with or without additional operational measures or temporary *protection* measures to minimise *power system* impact; or
 - (5) to operate the *network* element at a lower capacity.
- (b) If there is an *outage* of both *protection schemes* on a *network* element and the *Power System Controller* determines this to be an unacceptable risk to *power system security*, the *Power System Controller* shall take the *network* element out of service as soon as possible and advise any affected *User* immediately this action is undertaken.
- (c) Any affected *User* shall accept a determination made by the *Network Operator* under this clause 6.1.6.

6.1.6.1 Sensitivity of *protection*

- (a) All *protection schemes* shall have sufficient *sensitivity* to detect and correctly clear all *primary plant* faults within their intended normal operating zones, under both normal and *minimum system conditions*.
- (b) *Protection schemes* shall discriminate with the *Network Operator's protection*.

- (c) Under abnormal *plant* conditions, all primary system faults shall be detected and cleared by at least one *protection scheme* on the *User's* equipment. *Remote backup protection* or *standby protection* may be used for this purpose.
- (d) The *protection* will be considered to have sufficient *sensitivity* if it will detect and correctly clear a fault when there is half the fault current that will flow for the above conditions.
- (e) In rural areas where the earth return impedance is high, sensitive earth fault *protection* may also be required, in addition to the above backup and primary *protection*.

6.1.6.2 Clearance of small zone faults

Small zone faults shall be detected and cleared by *backup protection* as specified in clause 3.2.3.6.

6.1.6.3 Clearance of faults under circuit breaker fail conditions

Failure of a circuit breaker, due to either a mechanical or electrical fault, to clear a fault shall, when reasonably required by the *Network Operator*, be detected and the primary fault current shall be cleared by *backup protection* as specified in the clause 3.2.3.6.

6.1.6.4 Details of proposed Users' protection settings

Unless agreed otherwise, *Users* shall provide the *Network Operator* with full details of proposed *protection* settings and setting calculations on all *plant* that may impact on the *Network Operator's* power system a minimum of 65 *business days* prior to *energisation* of the protected *primary plant*. Refer to clause 7.1.3.

6.1.6.5 Coordination of protection settings

- (a) The *User* shall ensure that all their *protection* settings coordinate with existing *Network Operator protection* settings. Where this is not possible, the *User* will be responsible for the cost of revising *Network Operator* settings and upgrading *Network Operator* or other *Users'* equipment, where required.
- (b) Generally, *Network Operator protection* which discriminates on the basis of *time* employs devices with standard inverse characteristics to BS EN 60255-6:1995 with a 3 second curve at 10 times current and *time* multiplier of 1.0. Note that this is the specification of the characteristic rather than the device setting. Distance relay Zone 2 *time* is generally set to 400 msec and Zone 3 *time* to 1000 msec.
- (c) Specific details of *Network Operator protection* are available on request.

6.2 **Power system stability co-ordination**

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall use its reasonable endeavours to ensure that all necessary calculations associated with the stable operation of the *power system* as described in clause 2.6 and for the determination of settings of

equipment used to maintain that stability are carried out and to co-ordinate these calculations and determinations.

- (b) The *Network Operator* shall facilitate establishment of the parameters and endorse the installation of *power system* devices that are approved by the *Network Operator* to be necessary to assist the stable operation of the *power system*.

7 Commissioning and testing procedures

7.1 Commissioning

7.1.1 Requirement to inspect and test equipment

- (a) A *User* shall ensure that any of its new or replacement equipment is inspected and tested to demonstrate that it complies with relevant *Australian Standards*, relevant international standards, this *Code* and any relevant *Access Agreement* prior to or within an agreed *time* after being *connected* to a *network*, and the *Network Operator* is entitled to witness such inspections and tests.
- (b) The *User* shall produce test certificates on request by the *Network Operator* showing that the equipment has passed the tests and complies with the standards set out in clause 7.1.1(a) before *connection* to the *power system*, or within an agreed *time* thereafter.

7.1.2 Co-ordination during commissioning

A *User* seeking to *connect* to a *network* shall cooperate with the *Network Operator* to develop procedures to ensure that the commissioning of the *connection* and *connected facility* is carried out in a manner that:

- (a) Does not adversely affect other *Users* or affect *power system security* or *quality of supply* of the *power system*; and
- (b) Minimises the threat of damage to any other *Users'* equipment.

7.1.3 Control and *protection* settings for equipment

- (a) Not less than 65 *business days* prior to the proposed commencement of commissioning of any new or replacement equipment that could reasonably be expected to alter performance of the *power system*, the *User* shall submit to the *Network Operator* sufficient design information including proposed parameter settings to allow critical assessment including analytical modelling of the effect of the new or replacement equipment on the performance of the *power system*.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall:
 - (1) consult with other *Users* as appropriate; and
 - (2) within 20 *business days* of receipt of the design information under clause 7.1.3(a), notify the *User* of any comments on the proposed parameter settings for the new or replacement equipment.
- (c) If the *Network Operator's* comments include alternative parameter settings for the new or replacement equipment, then the *User* shall notify the *Network Operator* within 20 *business days* that it either accepts or disagrees with the alternative parameter settings suggested by the *Network Operator*.

- (d) The *Network Operator* and the *User* shall negotiate parameter settings that are acceptable to them both.
- (e) The *User* and the *Network Operator* shall co-operate with each other to ensure that adequate grading of *protection* is achieved so that faults within the *User's facility* are cleared without adverse effects on the *power system*.
- (f) The *User* shall pay the *Network Operator's* reasonable costs associated with the assessment of the parameter settings under this clause 7.1.3.

7.1.4 Commissioning program

- (a) Not less than 65 *business days* prior to the proposed commencement of commissioning by a *User* of any new or replacement equipment that could reasonably be expected to alter performance of the *power system*, the *User* shall advise the *Network Operator* in writing of the commissioning program including test procedures and proposed test equipment to be used in the commissioning.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall, within 20 *business days* of receipt of such advice under clause 7.1.4(a), notify the *User* either that it:
 - (1) agrees with the proposed commissioning program and test procedures;
or
 - (2) requires *changes* in the interest of maintaining *power system security, safety or quality of supply*.
- (c) If the *Network Operator* requires *changes*, then the parties shall co-operate to reach agreement and finalise the commissioning program within a reasonable period.
- (d) A *User* shall not commence the commissioning until the commissioning program has been finalised and the *Network Operator* shall not unreasonably delay finalising a commissioning program.
- (e) The *User* shall pay the *Network Operator's* reasonable costs associated with the assessment of the commissioning program under this clause 7.1.4.

7.1.5 Commissioning tests

- (a) The *Network Operator* has the right to witness commissioning tests relating to new or replacement equipment that could reasonably be expected to alter performance of the *power system* or the accurate *metering of energy*, including SCADA equipment.
- (b) Prior to *connection* to the *Network Operator's power system*, the *User* shall have provided to the *Network Operator* a signed written statement to certify that the equipment to be *connected* has been installed in accordance with:
 - (1) this *Code*;
 - (2) the relevant *Access Agreement*;

- (3) all relevant standards;
 - (4) all statutory requirements; and
 - (5) *good electricity industry practice*.
- (c) The statement shall have been certified by a professional engineer, as approved by the *Network Operator*.
- (d) The *Network Operator* shall, within a reasonable period of receiving advice of commissioning tests, notify the *User* whose new or replacement equipment is to be tested under this clause 7.1.5 whether or not it:
- (1) wishes to witness the commissioning tests; and
 - (2) agrees with the proposed commissioning times.
- (e) A *User* whose new or replacement equipment is tested under this clause 7.1.5 shall submit to the *Network Operator* the commissioning test results demonstrating that a new or replacement item of equipment complies with this *Code* or the relevant *Access Agreement* or both to the satisfaction of the *Network Operator*.
- (f) If the commissioning tests conducted in relation to a new or replacement item of equipment demonstrates non-compliance with one or more requirements of this *Code* or the relevant *Access Agreement* then the *User* whose new or replacement equipment was tested under this clause 7.1.5 shall promptly meet with the *Network Operator* to agree on a process aimed at achievement of compliance of the relevant item with this *Code*.
- (g) The *Network Operator* may direct that the commissioning and subsequent *connection* of the *User's* equipment should not proceed if the relevant equipment does not meet the technical requirements specified in clause 7.1.1.
- (h) All commissioning and testing of *User* owned equipment shall be carried out by personnel experienced in the commissioning of *power system primary plant* and *secondary plant*.
- (i) The *User* shall pay the *Network Operator's* reasonable costs associated with the witnessing of commissioning tests under this clause 7.1.5.

7.1.5.1 Commissioning of *protection*

- (a) The *Network Operator* reserves the right to witness the commissioning tests on any of the *User's protection* that it deems to be important or critical for the *reliable* operation and integrity of the *Network Operator power system*.
- (b) The *User* shall pay *Network Operator's* reasonable costs associated with the witnessing of the commissioning tests.
- (c) All commissioning and testing of *User* owned *protection* shall be carried out by personnel suitably qualified and experienced in the commissioning, testing and maintenance of *primary plant* and *secondary plant* and equipment.

8 Disconnection and reconnection of plant and equipment

8.1.1 Voluntary disconnection

- (a) Unless agreed otherwise and specified in an Access Agreement, a *User* shall give to the *Network Operator* notice in writing of its intention to permanently *disconnect a facility* from a *connection point*.
- (b) A *User* is entitled, subject to the terms of the relevant *Access Agreement*, to require voluntary permanent *disconnection* of its equipment from the *power system* in which case appropriate operating procedures necessary to ensure that the *disconnection* will not threaten *power system security* shall be implemented in accordance with clause 8.1.2.
- (c) The *User* shall pay all costs directly attributable to the voluntary *disconnection* and *decommissioning*.

8.1.2 Decommissioning procedures

- (a) In the event that a *User's facility* is to be permanently *disconnected* from the *power system*, whether in accordance with clause 8.1.1 or otherwise, the *Network Operator* and the *User* shall, prior to such *disconnection* occurring, follow agreed procedures for *disconnection*.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall notify other *Users* if it believes, in its reasonable opinion, the terms and conditions of such an *Access Agreement* will be affected by procedures for *disconnection* or proposed procedures agreed with any other *Users* The parties shall negotiate any amendments to the procedures for *disconnection* or the *Access Agreement* that may be required.
- (c) Any *disconnection* procedures agreed to or determined under clause 8.1.2(a) shall be followed by the *Network Operator* and all *Users*.

8.1.3 Involuntary disconnection (refer also to clause 4.7)

- (a) The *Network Operator* may *disconnect* a *User's* facilities from a *network*:
 - (1) during an emergency in accordance with clause 8.1.5;
 - (2) in accordance with relevant laws; or
 - (3) in accordance with the provisions of the *User's Access Agreement*.
- (b) In all cases of *disconnection* by the *Network Operator* during an emergency in accordance with clause 8.1.5, the *Network Operator* is required to undertake a review under clause 4.7.11 and the *Network Operator* shall then provide a report to the *User* advising of the circumstances requiring such action.

8.1.4 Disconnection due to breach of an Access Agreement

- (a) Subject to the relevant provisions the *Network Operator* may *disconnect* a *User's* facilities from a *network* if in the *Network Operator's* reasonable opinion, the *User* has breached a term of the *Access Agreement* and such breach poses a threat to *power system security*. In such circumstances the

Network Operator will not be liable in any way for any loss or damage suffered or incurred by the *User* by reason of the *disconnection* and the *Network Operator* will not be obliged for the duration of the *disconnection* to fulfil any agreement to convey electricity to or from the *User's facility*.

- (b) A *User* shall not bring proceedings against the *Network Operator* to seek to recover any amount for any loss or damage described in clause 8.1.4(a).
- (c) A *User* whose facilities have been *disconnected* under this clause 8.1.4 shall pay charges in accordance with the *Network Pricing and Charges Schedule* as if any *disconnection* had not occurred.

8.1.5 Disconnection during an emergency

Where the *Network Operator* may *disconnect* a *User's* facilities during an emergency under this *Code* or otherwise, then the *Network Operator* may:

- (a) Request the relevant *User* to reduce the *power transfer* at the proposed point of *disconnection* to zero in an orderly manner and then *disconnect* the *User's facility* by automatic or manual means; or
- (b) Immediately *disconnect* the *User's* facilities by automatic or manual means where, in the *Network Operator's* reasonable opinion, it is not appropriate to follow the procedure set out in clause 8.1.5(a) because action is urgently required as a result of a threat to safety of persons, hazard to equipment or a threat to *power system security*.

8.1.6 Obligation to reconnect

The *Network Operator* shall *reconnect* a *User's* facilities to a *network* at a reasonable cost to the *User* as soon as practical if:

- (a) *Disconnection* of the *User* during an emergency has taken place in accordance with clause 8.1.5.
- (b) A breach of this *Code* or *Access Agreement* giving rise to *disconnection* has been remedied; or
- (c) Where the breach is not capable of remedy, compensation has been agreed and paid by the *User* to the affected parties or, failing agreement, the amount of compensation payable has been determined in accordance with the dispute resolution process described in clause 1.6 and that amount has been paid; or
- (d) Where the breach is not capable of remedy and the amount of compensation has not been agreed or determined, assurances for the payment of reasonable compensation have been given to the satisfaction of the *Network Operator* and the parties affected; or
- (e) The *User* has taken all necessary steps to prevent the re-occurrence of the breach and has delivered binding undertakings to the *Network Operator* that the breach will not reoccur.

9 Operation of *Generators connected to the network*

9.1 *Power system security related market operations*

9.1.1 *Dispatch related limitations*

A *User* shall not, unless in the *User's* reasonable opinion public safety would otherwise be threatened or there would be a material risk of damaging equipment or the environment:

- (a) *Dispatch any energy from a Generation Unit, except:*
 - (1) in accordance with the procedures specified in this *Code* and its Technical Requirements for *connection*; or
 - (2) in accordance with an instruction from the *Power System Controller*; or
 - (3) as a consequence of operation of the *Generation Unit's* automatic load following scheme approved by the *Network Operator*; or
 - (4) in accordance with a procedure agreed with the *Network Operator*; or
 - (5) in *connection* with a test conducted in accordance with the requirements of this *Code* or a procedure agreed with by the *Network Operator*.
- (b) Adjust the *transformer tap position* or *excitation control system voltage* set-point of a *scheduled Generation Unit* except:
 - (1) in accordance with an instruction from or by agreement with the *Network Operator*; or
 - (2) in response to remote control signals given by the *Network Operator* or its agent; or
 - (3) if, in the scheduled *User's* reasonable opinion, the adjustment is urgently required to prevent material damage to the *User's plant* or associated equipment, or in the interests of safety; or
 - (4) in *connection* with a test agreed with the *Network Operator* and conducted in accordance with this *Code* or procedures agreed with the *Network Operator*.
- (c) *Energise a connection point* in relation to a *User's Generator* unit without prior approval from the *Network Operator*. This approval shall be obtained immediately prior to *energisation*;
- (d) *Synchronise a scheduled Generation Unit* to, or *de-synchronise a scheduled Generation Unit* from, the *power system* without prior approval from the *Power System Controller* except *de-synchronisation* as a consequence of the operation of automatic *protection* equipment or where such action is urgently required to prevent material damage to *plant* or equipment or in the interests of safety;
- (e) *Change the frequency response mode* of a *scheduled Generation Unit* without the prior approval of the *Network Operator*; or

- (f) Remove from service or interfere with the operation of any *power system* stabilising equipment installed on that *Generation Unit*.

See also clauses 3.3 and 4.2 of Version 4.0 of the *System Control Technical Code*.

9.1.2 Commitment of Generation Units

In relation to any *User's Generation Unit*, the *User* shall confirm with the *Power System Controller*, the expected synchronism *time* at least one hour before the expected actual *synchronising time*, and update this advice 5 minutes before *synchronising* unless otherwise agreed with the *Power System Controller*. The *Power System Controller* may require further notification immediately before *synchronisation*.

9.1.3 De-commitment, or output reduction, by Users requiring standby power

- (a) Any *User* requiring *standby power* from a *Generator* or the *Network Operator* shall notify the *Power System Controller* well in advance. To do this a *User* will have to both apply for it and include it in the *outage* and production plans they submit to the *Power System Controller*.
- (b) A *User* shall confirm with the *Power System Controller* the expected *de-synchronising time* at least one hour before the expected actual *de-synchronising time*, and update this advice 5 minutes before *de-synchronising* unless otherwise agreed with the *Power System Controller*. The *Power System Controller* may require further notification immediately before *de-synchronisation*.
- (c) Information to be confirmed with the *Power System Controller* to de-commit a *User's Generation Unit* if there is to be no automatic and coincident reduction in the *User's associated load* shall include:
 - (1) the *time* to commence decreasing the output of the *Generation Unit*;
 - (2) the *ramp rate* to decrease the output of the *Generation Unit*;
 - (3) the *time* to de-synchronise the *Generation Unit*; and
 - (4) the output from which the *Generation Unit* is to be de-synchronised
- (d) Any *User* not requiring *standby power* that wishes to take a *Generator* out-of-service shall first reduce the *associated load demand* by an amount equal to the *Generator* output to be reduced. Once the *demand* has been reduced, the *Generator's load* may be reduced. Clearance shall be obtained from the *Power System Controller* before commencing this exercise.

9.2 Users' plant changes

A *User* shall, without delay, notify the *Power System Controller* of any event which has *changed* or is likely to *change* the operational availability or *load* following capability of any of its *Generation Units*, whether the relevant *Generation Unit* is *synchronised* or not, as soon as the *User* becomes aware of the event.

9.3 Operation, maintenance and *extension* planning

Operation, maintenance and *extension* planning and co-ordination shall be performed in accordance with this *Code* and any applicable *Access Agreement*.

9.4 Generating limits

Limits to the VAr *Generation* and absorption capability of *Generation Facilities* and reactive compensation *plant* such as *static var compensators* shall not be exceeded.

10 **Metering requirements**

This clause 10 applies to all *Users* at any *revenue metering point* through which *energy* is transferred to or *energy* is taken from the *Network Operator's electricity network*.

10.1 **Purpose of metering clause**

- (a) The purpose of clause 10 is to set out the rights and obligations of *Users* and the *Network Operator*.
- (b) Clause 10 sets out provisions relating to:
 - (1) *revenue metering installations* used for the measurement of *active energy* and *reactive energy*, imported and/or exported;
 - (2) *check metering installations*;
 - (3) the collection of *revenue metering data*;
 - (4) the provision, installation and maintenance of equipment;
 - (5) the accuracy of *revenue metering equipment*;
 - (6) testing requirements;
 - (7) the security and rights of access to *revenue metering data* and equipment; and
 - (8) the provision of *revenue metering data*.

10.2 **Metering principles**

The key *metering* principles are as follows:

- (a) Each *connection point* shall have a *revenue metering installation*.
- (b) The type of *revenue metering installation* at each *revenue metering point* is to be determined by the *Network Operator* in accordance with the annual amount of *energy* passing through that *revenue metering point*.
- (c) The *Network Operator* will have responsibility for the provision and installation of *revenue metering* unless the *User* elects to provide and install the *revenue metering*, other than the *revenue meters*, which will be provided and installed by the *Network Operator*.
- (d) The *Network Operator* will install the *revenue meters* or the *revenue metering*, and will commission and maintain the *revenue metering*.
- (e) The *Network Operator* may offer to install a check meter, or check meters, or check *metering*, and commission and maintain check *metering* on behalf of the *User*.
- (f) The *Network Operator* will own the *revenue metering installation* and the *User* may be required to make a non-refundable contribution to the cost of the installation.

- (g) All costs associated with the auditing and maintenance of a *revenue metering installation* will be borne by the *User*.
- (h) The *Network Operator* shall ensure that the accuracy of each component of a *revenue metering installation* complies with its accuracy class.
- (i) *Energy data* is to be based on units of watt-hours *active energy* and var-hours *reactive energy*.
- (j) The *Network Operator* will make *revenue metering data* available to Each *User*, subject to confidentiality requirements.
- (k) The *revenue meters* used will make provision for signals comprising *energy* usage information to be available via volt free relay contacts at the *revenue metering* location.
- (l) The specifications for the *revenue metering voltage* and *current transformers* will make provision for secondary *voltages* and currents to allow the *User* to readily install check *metering*, if required by the *User*.
- (m) Historical *revenue metering data* is to be retained for a minimum of 7 years.
- (n) The *Network Operator* will audit *revenue metering* when requested.

10.3 Responsibility for *metering* installation

10.3.1 Responsibility of the *Network Operator*

- (a) No later than 20 *business days* after receiving a request for the provision of a *revenue metering installation*, or a *revenue metering installation* and a *check metering installation* from a prospective *User*, the *Network Operator* shall provide a quotation and any conditions on which the offer is made
- (b) The *Network Operator* will advise the *User* of its right to provide and install certain *revenue metering* components in accordance with Attachment 4 and the *Network Operator's Metering Manuals*, *Underground Manual* and *Overhead Line Manual*.
- (c) If the *User* accepts the offer, the *Network Operator* has the responsibility for the provision, installation, commissioning and maintenance of the *revenue metering equipment* in accordance with Attachment 4 and the *Network Operator's metering manuals*, *Underground Manual* and *Overhead Line Manual*.

10.3.2 *User* elects to provide and install certain *metering* components

- (a) If the *User* does not accept the offer made by the *Network Operator* to provide a *revenue metering installation*, the *User* will be responsible for the provision and installation of the *revenue metering*, except for the *revenue meters* in accordance with Attachment 4 and the *Network Operator's metering manuals* and the *check metering*, if required by the *User*.

- (b) The *Network Operator* will provide and install the *revenue meters*, commission the installation and provide ongoing maintenance of the *revenue metering installation* in accordance with Attachment 4 and the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.

10.3.3 Other responsibilities

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall ensure that the *revenue metering installation* is provided, installed and maintained in accordance with Attachment 4 and the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.
- (b) The *User*, if providing and installing *revenue metering equipment*, shall ensure that the equipment complies with Attachment 4 and the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.
- (c) Prior to installation, the equipment that is involved in measurement of *energy*, other than the check meters shall be submitted to the *Network Operator* for testing for compliance with the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.

10.4 Metering installation arrangements

10.4.1 Metering installation components

- (a) A *revenue metering installation* shall comply with the requirements of the National Standards (Weight & Measures) Act in regard to being a measuring device that is used for trade or legal purposes.
- (b) A *revenue metering installation* shall:
 - (1) contain a measuring device for active and *reactive energy* and a visible display of all *revenue metering data* as per Australian Standard AS1284;
 - (2) be accurate in accordance with Attachment 4;
 - (3) have electronic data transfer facilities;
 - (4) be secure in accordance with the *Network Operator's metering manuals*;
 - (5) have electronic data recording facilities for active and *reactive energy* flows;
 - (6) be capable of separately registering and recording *energy* import and export where *bi-directional energy* flows occur;
 - (7) be capable of providing *revenue metering data* to a communication system; and
 - (8) include a communication system for two way communications with the *Network Operator*.
- (c) A *revenue metering installation* will consist of combinations of, but is not limited to, the following:
 - (1) *current transformer*;
 - (2) *voltage transformers*;

- (3) secure and protected wiring;
 - (4) *revenue meter* panels on which the *revenue meters* and communication equipment are mounted;
 - (5) communication equipment such as modem, Public Switched Telephone *Network connection*, isolation, radio transmitter and receiver, data link, or power line carrier equipment;
 - (6) test links and fusing;
 - (7) *energy* and status signals;
 - (8) summation equipment;
 - (9) *revenue metering* enclosure;
 - (10) marshalling boxes; and
 - (11) *revenue metering* unit.
- (d) The *revenue metering installation* is exclusively for *revenue metering* other than the provision of *energy* and status signals which may be provided to the *User* for other purposes.

10.4.2 Metering for connection of Small Inverter Energy Systems

- (a) A *User* with a *Small Inverter Energy System* shall make provision for both an import and export meter.
- (b) Should an additional meter be required for the export power meter, the *User* may need to install an additional meter box or rearrange the existing meter box to accommodate a second meter.

10.4.3 Use of meters

- (a) *Revenue metering data* will be used by the *Network Operator* as the primary source of billing data.
- (b) Where appropriate check *metering* data is available, it will be used by the *Network Operator* for:
 - (1) validation;
 - (2) substitution; and
 - (3) account estimation
 of *revenue metering data* as required by clause 10.9.4.

10.4.4 Metering type and accuracy

- (a) The accuracy for a *revenue metering installation* and the requirements for a *revenue metering installation* that shall be installed at each *revenue metering point* shall be in accordance with Attachment 4 and the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.

- (b) A *check metering installation* is not required, but if provided by a *User* it may use the *voltages* and *currents* provided by the *revenue metering voltage transformers* and *current transformers*. The check meter or check meters will be of the same class as the *revenue meters*.
- (c) If the *User* elects to provide separate *current transformers* and *voltage transformers* they shall comply with clause 10.3.3.

10.4.5 Data collection system

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall ensure that an appropriate communication system is installed to each *revenue metering installation*.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall establish processes for the collection of *revenue metering data* from each *revenue metering installation* for storage in a *revenue metering data* base in accordance with the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.
- (c) The *Network Operator* may obtain *revenue metering data* directly from a *revenue metering installation*.

10.4.6 Payment for metering

- (a) The *User* is responsible for payment of all costs associated with the provision, installation, commissioning, maintenance, routine testing and inspection, routine audits, downloading of *revenue metering data*, processing and account resolution for a *revenue metering installation*.
- (b) The cost of requisition testing and audits shall be borne by the party requesting the test or audit, except where the *revenue metering installation* is shown not to comply with this clause, in which case the *Network Operator* shall bear the cost.

10.5 Register of metering information

- (a) As part of the *revenue metering database*, the *Network Operator* shall maintain a *revenue metering register* of all *Users' revenue metering installations* and *check metering installations* that provide tariff data.
- (b) The *revenue metering register* for a particular *User's revenue metering installation* shall be made available to the *User* on request.

10.5.1 Meter register discrepancy

- (a) If a discrepancy is noted between the *User's installation* and the *revenue metering register*, the *Network Operator* shall correct the discrepancy within 2 days.
- (b) If as a result of the correction of the *revenue metering register* it indicates that the *revenue metering installation* or *check metering installation* does not comply with the requirements of this clause, the *Network Operator* shall use its reasonable endeavours to rectify the situation in regard to the *revenue metering installation*. If the *check metering installation* does not comply with

the requirement of this clause, reference to it will be deleted from the *revenue metering register*.

10.6 Testing of *metering* installation

- (a) Testing of a *revenue metering installation* shall be carried out in accordance with the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.
- (b) A *User* may request the *Network Operator* to arrange for the testing of any *User's revenue metering installation* and the *Network Operator* shall not refuse any reasonable request.
- (c) The *User* will have the right to be present at any such testing.
- (d) The *Network Operator* shall arrange for sufficient audit testing of *Users' revenue metering installations* to satisfy itself that each *revenue metering installation* conforms to the requirements of this clause.
- (e) The *Network Operator* shall have unfettered access to any *User's revenue metering installation* at any *time* for the purpose of testing the *revenue metering installation*.

10.6.1 Actions in event of non-compliance

- (a) If a *revenue metering installation* does not comply with the requirements of this clause, the *Network Operator* shall as soon as practical advise the *User* and arrange for the *revenue metering installation* to be made compliant with the requirements of this clause.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall in conjunction with the *User* make appropriate corrections to the *revenue metering data* to take account of any errors as a result of the non-compliance found in 10.6.1(a).

10.6.2 Audits of *metering* data

- (a) A *User* may request the *Network Operator* to conduct an audit to determine consistency between the data held in the *revenue metering database* and the *revenue metering data* held in the *User's revenue metering installation*.
- (b) If there is an inconsistency between the data held in a *revenue metering installation* and the data held in the *revenue metering database*, the data held in the *revenue metering installation* is to be taken as prima facie evidence of the *revenue metering data*.

10.7 Rights of access to *metering* data

- (a) The only persons entitled to have either direct or remote access to *revenue metering data* from a *revenue metering installation*, the *revenue metering database* or the *revenue metering register* in relation to a *revenue metering point* are:
 - (1) the *Network Operator*; and

- (2) the *User* whose account statement relates to *energy* measured at that *revenue metering point*.
- (b) Electronic access to *revenue metering data* from a *revenue metering installation* shall only be provided where appropriate multi-level password *revenue meters* are installed and the appropriate software is obtained by the *User*.

10.8 Security of *metering* installations

10.8.1 Security of *metering equipment*

- (a) The *Network Operator* is responsible for the security of the *revenue metering installation* and will fit seals or other devices to prevent or disclose unauthorised access.

10.8.2 Security controls

- (a) The *Network Operator* is responsible for the security of *revenue metering data* held in the *revenue metering installation* and shall prevent local or remote access by suitable passwords and/or other security devices in accordance with clause 10.8.1.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall keep records of electronic passwords secure.
- (c) The *Network Operator* may allocate a “read-only” password to a *User* where the *revenue meters* installed have provision for multi-level passwords.

10.8.3 Changes to *metering equipment*, parameters and settings

The *Network Operator* shall record all *changes* to *revenue metering equipment*, parameters and settings.

10.9 Processing of *metering* data for settlement purposes

10.9.1 *Metering* databases

- (a) The *Network Operator* will create, maintain and administer a *revenue metering database* containing information for each *User revenue metering installation*.
- (b) The *revenue metering database* shall include original *energy* readings and substitute calculated values where estimates may be required.

10.9.2 Remote acquisition of data

- (a) The *Network Operator* is responsible for the remote acquisition of *revenue metering data* and for storing and processing this data for settlement purposes.
- (b) If remote acquisition becomes unavailable, the *Network Operator* is responsible for obtaining the relevant *revenue metering data* from the *revenue meters*.

10.9.3 Periodic *energy metering*

Data relating to the amount of active and *reactive energy* passing through a *revenue metering installation* is normally collated in trading intervals of between 28 and 35 days inclusive unless it has been agreed between the *User* and the *Network Operator* that some other period will apply either on an ongoing or once-off basis.

10.9.4 Data validation and substitution

- (a) At commissioning, the *Network Operator* will validate, on-site, the data being recorded by a *revenue metering installation* against the measurement of basic parameters and the *User's* estimation of *load*.
- (c) Check *metering* data, where available, may be used by the *Network Operator* to validate *revenue metering data* provided that the check *metering* data has been appropriately adjusted for differences in *revenue metering installation* accuracy.
- (d) For the purpose of settlement, check *metering* data, if available, may be substituted either in whole or part for some or whole of the *revenue metering* readings.
- (e) If a check meter is not available or *metering* data cannot be recovered from the *metering* installation within the *time* required for *settlements*, then a substitute value is to be prepared by the *Network Operator* using a method agreed with the *User*.

10.9.5 Errors found in *metering* tests, inspections or audits

- (a) If a *revenue metering installation* test, inspection or audit demonstrates that a component of the *revenue metering* has errors in excess of those permitted by its class and it is not possible to determine from other data when the error occurred, the error will be deemed to have occurred at a *time* halfway between the *time* the error was found and the *time* of the previous most recent test or inspection which demonstrated that the installation complied with Attachment 4 and the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.
- (b) If a test or audit of a *revenue metering installation* demonstrates that a component of a *revenue metering system* has an error less than 1.5 *times* the error permitted for that component, then no substitution of readings is required.

10.9.6 Load following and out of balance *energy*

The *Network Operator* shall forward *metering* data to the *Power System Controller* for *load* following reconciliation and out of balance *energy* settlement.

10.10 Confidentiality

Revenue metering data and passwords are confidential data and are to be treated as confidential information.

10.11 Meter *time*

- (a) All *revenue metering installation* clocks are to be referenced to Australian Central Standard *Time* and maintained to a standard of accuracy as required by Australian Standard AS 1284.
- (b) The *revenue metering database* shall be set within an accuracy of ± 10 seconds of Australian Central Standard *Time*.

11 Information requirements for *network connection*

11.1 Scope

- (a) The following information requirements apply to the *connection* of *Users* to the *Power and Water networks*.
- (b) The *Network Operator* is obliged to obtain sufficient information in respect of a *network connection* to enable the *Network Operator* to ensure that the relevant *User connection* will not prevent the *network* performance standards in clause 2 of the *Code* from being met.
- (c) If, in the opinion of the *Network Operator*, additional information for a particular *User connection* is required to ensure the *network* performance standards in clause 2 of the *Code* are met, the *User* shall *supply* the additional information.
- (d) The *User* shall provide all data reasonably required by the *Network Operator*.
- (e) Particular provisions may be waived for smaller *Users* and *Users* that have no potential to affect other *Users*, at the discretion of the *Network Operator*, in accordance with the *derogation* provisions of clause 12.
- (f) Nothing in this section waives the requirements for all installations to comply with the *Network Operator's* Service and Installation Rules, *Metering* Manual, Contractor's Bulletins, and any requirement included in an *Access Agreement*.

11.2 Information to be provided by all *network Users*

11.2.1 Information on *connected plant*

- (a) Before any new or additional equipment is *connected*, the *User* may be required to submit the following kinds of information to the *Network Operator*:
 - (1) a single line diagram with the *protection* details;
 - (2) *metering* system design details for equipment being provided by the *User*;
 - (3) a general arrangement locating all the equipment on the site;
 - (4) a general arrangement for each new or altered *substation* showing all exits and the position of all electrical equipment;
 - (5) type test certificates for all new switchgear and *transformers*, including measurement *transformers* to be used for *metering* purposes in accordance with clause 10 (*metering*) of this *Code*;
 - (6) the proposed methods of earthing cables and other equipment to comply with the Electricity Supply Association of Australia Substation Earthing Guide, or *Australian Standard* AS3000, or both, as appropriate;
 - (7) *plant* and earth grid test certificates from approved test authorities;

- (8) a primary/secondary injection test of *protection* and trip test certificates on all circuit breakers;
 - (9) certification that all new equipment has been inspected before being *connected to the supply*;
 - (10) operational procedures;
 - (11) calculated maximum *demand* of the installation;
 - (12) details of potentially disturbing *loads*; and
 - (13) SCADA arrangements.
- (b) Details of the kinds of data that may be required are included in Attachment 3.

11.2.2 Details of proposed *Users' protection*

- (a) Unless otherwise agreed by the *Network Operator*, *Users* shall provide the *Network Operator* with full details of proposed *protection* designs, together with all relevant *plant* parameters, a minimum of 12 *months* prior to *energisation* of the protected *primary plant*.
- (b) The *Network Operator* shall provide comments on a *User's* proposed *protection* designs within 65 *business days*, unless otherwise agreed.

11.2.3 Requirements where a *critical fault clearance time* exists

- (a) Where a *critical fault clearance time* exists, *Users* shall maintain a record of design *fault clearance times* for all circuit breakers within their *plant*.
- (b) Records of design *fault clearance times* shall be made available to the *Network Operator* on request.

11.3 Information to be provided by *Users* with *Generators*

- (a) A *User* with a *Generator* shall provide the data specified in clause 11.2.
- (b) The *User* shall provide all other data reasonably required by the *Network Operator*. This data shall include, without limitation, full models (and all model parameters) of:
 - (1) the *Generation Units*;
 - (2) the *excitation control systems*;
 - (3) turbine / engine *governor systems*; and
 - (4) *power system stabilisers*;
 - (5) to enable the *Network Operator* to conduct dynamic simulations.
- (c) These models shall be in a form which is compatible with the *power system* analysis software used by the *Network Operator* (currently PSS/E from Siemens PTI) and shall be inherently stable.

- (d) Details of the kinds of data that may be required are included in Attachment 3 of this *Code*, specifically:
 - (1) Schedule S3.1 - *Generation Unit* design data;
 - (2) Schedule S3.2 - *Generation Unit* setting data;
 - (3) Schedule S3.5 - *Network* and *plant* technical data; and
 - (4) Schedule S3.6 - *Network plant* and apparatus setting data.

11.4 Information to be provided by Users with Small Generators

- (a) A *User* with a *Small Generator* shall provide the data specified in clause 11.2.
- (b) A *Small Generator* shall provide all information in relation to the design, construction, operation and configuration of that small *power station* as is required by the *Network Operator* to ensure that the operation and performance standards of the *network*, or other *Users*, are not adversely affected by the operation of the *power station*.
- (c) In order to assess the impact of the equipment on the operation and performance of the *network* or on other *Users*, the *Network Operator* may require a *Small Generator* to provide data on:
 - (1) *power station* and *Generation Unit* aggregate real and *reactive power*; and
 - (2) flicker coefficients and harmonic profile of the equipment, where applicable and especially for wind power and inverter *connected* equipment. Data on power quality characteristics, including flicker and harmonics, in accordance with IEC 61400- 21 shall be provided for all wind turbines.
- (d) Net import / export data shall be provided in the form of:
 - (1) a typical 24 hour power curve measured at 15 minute intervals (or better if available); and
 - (2) details of the maximum kVA output over a 60 second interval, or such other form as specified in the relevant *Access Agreement*.
- (e) When requested by the *Network Operator*, a *Small Generator* shall provide details of the proposed operation of the equipment during start-up, shut-down, normal daily operation, intermittent fuel or wind variations and under fault or emergency conditions.
- (f) Details of the kinds of data that may be required are included in Attachment 3 of this *Code*, specifically:
 - (1) Schedule S3.3 - *Generator* data for *Small Generation Units*;
 - (2) Schedule S3.5 - *Network* and *plant* technical data; and
 - (3) Schedule S3.6 - *Network plant* and apparatus setting data.

11.5 Information to be provided by Users with *Small Inverter Energy Systems*

A *Small Inverter Energy System* may be installed as an addition to an existing *load connection*, in conjunction with a new *load connection* or as a stand-alone *Generation system*.

- (a) A *User* with a *Small Inverter Energy System* shall provide the data specified in clause 11.2.
- (b) Details of the kinds of data that may be required from a *User* with a *Small Inverter Energy System* are included in Attachment 3 of this *Code*, specifically:
 - (1) Schedule S3.4 - Technical data for *Small Inverter Energy Systems*;
 - (2) Schedule S3.5 - *Network* and *plant* technical data;
 - (3) Schedule S3.6 - *Network plant* and apparatus setting data; and
 - (4) Schedule S3.7 - *Load* characteristics at *connection point*.

11.6 Information to be provided by Users with *loads*

- (a) A *User* with a *Load* shall provide the data specified in clause 11.2.
- (b) Details of the kinds of data that may be required from a *User* with a *Load* are included in Attachment 3 of this *Code*, specifically:
 - (1) Schedule S3.5 - *Network* and *plant* technical data;
 - (2) Schedule S3.6 - *Network plant* and apparatus setting data; and
 - (3) Schedule S3.7 - *Load* characteristics at *connection point*.

12 Derogations from the Code

12.1 Purpose and application

- (a) This clause 12 prevails over all other clauses of this *Code*.
- (b) *Derogations of Users* are:
 - (1) those provisions of the other clauses of the *Code* which shall not apply either in whole or part to particular *Users* or potential *Users* or others in relation to their facilities for a fixed or indeterminate period;
 - (2) any provisions which substitute for those provisions which are not to apply; and
 - (3) applicable only to that particular *User* or potential *User*.
- (c) *Derogations* are for the purpose of:
 - (1) enabling *Users* to effect an orderly transition to the provisions of the *Code* from those provisions currently applying;
 - (2) providing specific exemptions from the *Code* for pre-existing arrangements which the *Network Operator* determines shall continue beyond a specific transition period; and
 - (3) providing specific exemptions from the *Code* for future arrangements that the *Network Operator* determines to be acceptable.
- (d) Applications for *derogations* shall be submitted to and processed by the *Network Operator* in accordance with the *Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Act 2011*.

12.2 Networks and facilities existing at 1 September 2012

All *plant* and equipment in the *Network* and all facilities *connected* to this *network* existing at 1 September 2012 are deemed to comply with the requirements of this *Code*. If at any *time* it is found that an installation is adversely affecting *power system security, reliability of the power system and/or the quality of supply*, the relevant *User* shall be responsible for remedying the problem at its cost.

Part C *Network Planning Criteria*

Power and Water is the major custodian and operator of the power *networks* within the Northern Territory. *Power and Water* is responsible for the *network* security, *reliability* and *quality of supply* to all *network Users*. *Power and Water's* technical requirements are intended to ensure that a high *reliability* of service is maintained when additions and *changes* to the *networks* or *Users' installations* are made. Technical requirements are based on the rules, criteria and limits included in the *Technical Code* and these *Network Planning Criteria*.

The *Network Planning Criteria* provide for the requirements of the legislated Third Party Access regime, which permits *network customers* to use *Power and Water's* regulated *networks* to enable contracted trade between *Generator Users* and *customer Users*.

The purpose of *Network Planning Criteria* is to strike a balance between each *User's* need for a safe, secure, *reliable*, high quality electricity *supply* and the desire for this service to be provided at minimal cost. At the same *time*, environmental and social considerations shall be taken into account.

13 Introduction

- (a) Additions to and reinforcement of the *networks* in the form of additional:
- (1) *Transmission lines* and *distribution feeders*;
 - (2) *Transformers*;
 - (3) *Generators*;
 - (4) *Loads*; and
 - (5) *Capacitors* or *reactors*;
- will produce an impact on the existing *networks* and *customers*.
- (b) This Part C presents the *Planning Criteria* applied to ensure that *Power and Water's networks*:
- (1) Provide a high quality electricity *supply*;
 - (2) Provide a *reliable* electricity *supply*;
 - (3) Provide a secure electricity *supply*;
 - (4) Meet safety standards;
 - (5) Meet environmental standards;
 - (6) Optimise equipment utilisation; and
 - (7) Optimise *network losses*.
- (c) The philosophy of *network* planning and the rationale behind the *Planning Criteria* are discussed in clause 13.1 of this document.
- (d) The guidelines for *network* planning, which are provided in this document, outline the range of technical and environmental *Planning Criteria*.

13.1 Network design philosophy

- (a) The *Planning Criteria* are used to assess the *supply* system capacity and determine the need for and timing of:
 - (1) *Generation* support;
 - (2) *Demand* management;
 - (3) *Network* reinforcement; or
 - (4) *Network* re-configuration;to meet *customers' demand* for electricity.
- (b) *Network* reinforcement plans may then be developed which will satisfy the *Planning Criteria* and environmental *constraints*.

13.2 Amendments to the *Planning Criteria*

- (a) Any *System Participant* may propose an amendment to the *Planning Criteria*.
- (b) A proposal to amend the *Planning Criteria* shall be made in writing by the *System Participant* to the *Network Operator* and shall be accompanied by:
 - (1) the reasons for the proposed amendment to the *Planning Criteria*; and
 - (2) an explanation of the effect on *System Participants* of the proposed amendment to the *Planning Criteria*.
- (c) The *Network Operator* shall review the proposed amendment to the *Planning Criteria* and within 30 days advise the *System Participant* or electricity entity:
 - (1) whether the proposed amendment to the *Planning Criteria* is accepted or rejected; and
 - (2) the reasons for the acceptance or rejection of the proposed amendment to the *Planning Criteria*.
- (d) The *Network Operator* shall review the operation of the *Planning Criteria* at intervals of no more than 5 years and may seek submissions from *System Participants* and the Utilities Commission during the course of the review.
- (e) The *Network Operator* may amend this *Planning Criteria* in accordance with the legislative provisions.

13.3 132 kV and 66 kV networks

The traditional planning philosophy for a meshed *network* has been that the loss of any one component of the *network* at a *time* of *peak load* will not result in the loss of *supply* to any *customers*. This is the 'n-1' criterion, which can result in imprudent capital expenditure if the *frequency* and consequences of breaching the criterion are not considered. Prudent capital expenditure involves the application of risk management techniques. This requires a consideration of the probability of an event occurring and the consequences of its occurrence, for example the impact on *customers*. If the probability of the event is low and the

consequences acceptable, it may be considered justified to delay system reinforcement beyond the date indicated by the n-1 criterion and *peak loading*.

- (a) *Power and Water* designs its 132 kV and 66 kV systems as meshed *networks*.
- (b) There may be radial 132 kV and 66 kV lines extending from the meshed *network* to many rural and developing areas.
- (c) *Generators* are connected to the *networks* at voltages of 132 kV and 66 kV. The technical characteristics of *Generator* connections may be negotiated with the *Generator* provided that the *network* performance standards of clause 2 of the *Network Technical Code* are maintained.

13.4 Distribution networks

Power and Water designs its *distribution networks* as radial systems.

13.4.1 CBD area

- (a) In the Darwin central business district, five 11 kV switching stations *supply* a *network* of underground HV feeder rings, with open points approximately mid-way between switching stations ¹.
- (b) The switching stations are remotely controlled, but the intermediate switches used to transfer *load* and restore *supply* in the event of a *supply* contingency are operated manually.

13.4.2 Urban areas

- (a) In urban areas the lower density of *Users* generally results in an open, meshed *network* of HV feeders run radially with open points.
- (b) This operating mode minimises fault levels and simplifies technical and operational requirements.
- (c) In these situations the extent of the loss of *supply* can be minimised by the use of reclosers and sectionalisers to limit the impact of faults and the speed of restoration improved through the use of fault indicators to locate faults.

13.4.3 Rural areas

- (a) In rural areas the *distribution network* is generally radial and *interconnection* to reduce *supply* restoration times is often not possible.
- (b) In normal circumstances the loss of a component of the *network* will result in the loss of *supply* to a number of *Users* until the *network* is reconfigured or repaired.

¹ *Power and Water's* High Voltage (HV) networks operate at *voltage* levels of 22 kV in rural areas and 11 kV in urban areas.

13.4.4 Enhanced security of *supply*

- (a) The *Network Operator* will provide for the reasonable request of a *User* requiring additional security of *supply* above the standard design philosophy.
- (b) Additional costs incurred in providing the additional security of *supply* would ordinarily be charged to the *User*.
- (c) In some circumstances, on-site standby *Generation* may be the only economic or practical alternative to improve *supply* security.

13.4.5 Embedded *generation*

- (a) The *distribution network* is not designed to support the islanded operation of *embedded Generators* and *Power and Water's distribution* equipment is not normally fitted with *synchronising* equipment.
- (b) *Embedded Generation Units*, including small solar photo-voltaic and wind *Generators* at *network Users' premises* shall be of a design that automatically *disconnects* from the *network* if the *distribution feeder* that they are *connected* to is separated from the remainder of the *power system*.
- (c) The requirements concerning the *connection* of *Small Generators* and *Small Inverter Energy Systems* are set out in clauses 3.4 and 3.5 of the *Network Technical Code*.

13.5 Process to assess the need for *network* reinforcement

- (a) *Network* capacity and the need for *network* reinforcement are assessed by comparing the *Planning Criteria* with *network* performance for:
 - (1) Increasing *load* levels;
 - (2) Changing *load demand* patterns;
 - (3) Particular *load* characteristics; and
 - (4) *Reliability*.
- (b) To satisfy the performance levels, be they *reliability*, security, or quality levels, least cost and effective plans are developed. The extent of the *network* reinforcement works is dependent on:
 - (1) The *load* forecast;
 - (2) The anticipated maximum *demands* of all *Users*;
 - (3) Special conditions of the *User's load*;
 - (4) The anticipated minimum *demand* of other *Users*;
 - (5) *Users' load* profiles;
 - (6) The availability of non-*network* alternatives to *network* reinforcement; and
 - (7) The age and condition of existing assets.

- (c) Economic analysis is used in assessing *network* reinforcement requirements and serves four functions as it:
 - (1) Indicates the return to *Power and Water* of proposed capital investment;
 - (2) Helps to choose between options;
 - (3) Helps rank the project with other projects *generated* throughout *Power and Water*; and
 - (4) Ensures the equitable allocation of costs between *Users*.
- (d) In some cases, *network* reinforcement works may also be justified on an economic basis where there are immediate benefits in return for capital invested, eg. *network* loss optimisation.

13.6 The process of developing *network* concept plans

- (a) *Power and Water*, in developing *network* concept plans for the long-term development of the *network*, uses ultimate *load* horizon planning.
- (b) In this methodology *Power and Water* considers the following information in assessing the ultimate *load* for an area:
 - (1) Department of Lands Planning and Environment land use structure plans;
 - (2) Australian Bureau of Statistics censuses;
 - (3) Consultants' reports on population growth in the major centres;
 - (4) Any relevant town planning schemes;
 - (5) Local Government advice on future planning proposals;
 - (6) Geographic features and their associated design limitations; and
 - (7) Any environmental *constraints*, including vegetation and ecology limitations.
- (c) This information is combined with any other available future *load* information to produce an ultimate *load* assessment for an area and on the basis of this a *network* concept plan is developed.

13.7 Planning Criteria

Planning Criteria are a set of standards applied to maintain appropriate levels of *network* security and *reliability*. They are used as a planning and design tool to protect the interests of all *network Users* in terms of *reliability* and *quality of supply*. The criteria are also applied to protect all *networks* against instability.

13.8 Network development

The *Network Operator* is required to ensure that non-*network* alternatives to the reinforcement of the *network* are considered on an equivalent basis to *network* reinforcement and adopted where they can economically meet the *network*

performance standards in clause 2 of the *Network Technical Code* and the *supply contingency criteria* in clause 14 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

Non-*network* alternatives may include, without limitation, the following programs and technologies:

- Pricing signals to influence customer *demand*;
- Direct control of customer *demand*;
- Installation of *power factor* correction;
- Installation of embedded *generation*.

Non-*network* alternatives may involve agreements between the *Network Operator* and third parties for the provision of support to the *network* in specified contingency conditions.

13.8.1 Annual planning review

The *Network Operator* shall annually:

- (a) Prepare a forecast of loads and *generation* for the system for a period of at least 5 years.
- (b) Conduct a planning review of the adequacy of existing *connection points* and the capacity of the *transmission* and *distribution networks* to meet forecast *load demands* and *generation demands*.
- (c) Consider the potential for augmentations, or non-*network* alternatives to augmentations, that are likely to provide economic benefit to all *network Users*.
- (d) Identify where *network investments* are likely to be required and classify those investments as:
 - (1) a *small network investment*; or
 - (2) a *large network investment*.
- (e) Prepare a *Network Management Plan* containing, amongst other things, *network* limitations and potential non-*network* and *network* solutions for *small network investments* and *large network investments* in a form suitable for public dissemination.
- (f) The *Network Management Plan* shall be made available on Power and Water's web site and made available to the interested parties established in clause 13.8.2(a) or to any person, upon application.

13.8.2 Non-*network* alternatives to *network* augmentation

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall establish and maintain a list of interested parties that may be prepared to provide non-*network* alternatives to augmentation of the *network*.

- (b) The *Network Operator* shall carry out a screening test to determine whether *demand* management or other non-*network* alternatives are likely to be viable for each *network investment* identified in clause 13.8.1(d).
- (c) Where *demand* management or other non-*network* alternatives are not likely to be viable for a *network investment* the *Network Operator* shall carry out analysis of the *network* reinforcement in accordance with clause 13.9.
- (d) Where *demand* management or other non-*network* alternatives are likely to be viable for a *large network investment*, the *Network Operator* shall:
 - (1) publish a report detailing the circumstances of the large network investment and the outcome of the demand management screening test in clause 13.8.2(b);
 - (2) advise interested parties of the large network investment;
 - (3) seek expressions of interest in providing a non-*network* alternative.
- (e) If no expression of interest in providing a non-*network* alternative to a large network investment has been received within 60 business days the *Network Operator* shall carry out analysis of the *network* reinforcement in accordance with clause 13.9.
- (f) Where *demand* management or other non-*network* alternatives are likely to be viable for a *small network investment*, the *Network Operator* shall inform interested parties of the outcome of the screening test in clause 13.8.2(b) and request expressions of interest in providing a non-*network* alternative.
- (g) If no expression of interest in providing a non-*network* alternative to a small network investment has been received within 30 business days the *Network Operator* shall carry out analysis of the *network* reinforcement in accordance with clause 13.9.
- (h) The *Network Operator* shall carry out the analysis of non-*network* alternatives provided by interested parties under clauses 13.8.2(d) and 13.8.2(f) in accordance with clause 13.9.

13.9 Investment analysis and reporting

In determining the preferred option for a new *large network investment*, the *Network Operator* shall:

- (a) Analyse the proposed *large network investment* using financial parameters consistent with the most recent *Network* regulatory determination.
- (b) Analyse non-*network* alternatives and *network* reinforcement alternatives on the same basis.
- (c) Determine on a present value basis the least-cost non-*network* or *network* reinforcement alternative that meets the requirements of the *network* performance standards in clause 2 of the Code and the *supply* contingency criteria in clause 14 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

- (d) Include in the investment analysis an estimate of system benefits where they are likely to be material to the outcome of the analysis, including, but not limited to:
 - (1) Electrical losses;
 - (2) Changes in the level of involuntary load curtailment;
 - (3) Fuel and *generation* costs;
 - (4) Ancillary services provided to the system (eg. voltage support, spinning reserve, black start).
- (e) The level of analysis undertaken in relation to system benefits in clause 13.9(c) shall be proportionate to the size and scale of the proposed new *network* investment.
- (f) Determine and assess any non-quantifiable economic benefits of alternative investment options.
- (g) Determine the preferred non-*network* or *network* investment alternative.
- (h) Prepare a report on the *network* investment analysis in clause 13.9(a) to (g).

14 Supply contingency criteria

- (a) *Supply* contingency criteria relate to the ability of the *supply* system (*network* and *Generation*) to be reconfigured after a fault, so that the *supply* to *customers* is restored. The criteria apply to *Generation* used to support the *network* and to the *network interconnections* to *Generators*.
- (b) The following definitions apply.

14.1 Load areas

- (a) The *load* areas that have been identified for the purpose of the *supply* contingency criteria are set out in Table 11.

Table 11 - Definition of load types

Load type	Definition
CBD	Any area within a city or town that is zoned as CBD in the Northern Territory Planning Scheme.
Urban	An area in which the majority of the land is zoned for residential and/or commercial and/or industrial use within a major centre in the Northern Territory and is not CBD.
Non-urban	Areas that are not Urban and not within a CBD but which are within a 50km radius of a CBD.
Remote	Areas outside a 50km radius from a CBD.

- (b) A distinction has been made between the *supply* contingency criteria applicable to CBD and Urban *load* areas, and those applicable to Non-urban and Remote *load* areas.
- (c) A *supply* contingency may involve the unplanned failure of an element of *network* equipment or the failure of a *Generator* used to support the *network* at a particular location.

14.2 Supply contingencies

- (a) A single *supply* contingency (first contingency) may involve the unplanned failure of an element of *network* equipment (a cable, line or *transformer*), or the failure of a *Generator* used to support the *network* or *supply loads* at a particular location.

A second contingency provision has been included, which is similar to that in the CBD areas of most other Australian capital cities. Other CBDs currently are planned to provide second contingency capability at the *subtransmission* and *zone substation* level, as follows:

- **Brisbane:** in one hour;
- **Melbourne:** in 30 minutes; and
- **Sydney:** in one hour.

The longer *time* permitted for restoration of the Darwin CBD system recognises that manual switching of *load* on the CBD HV *network* would be necessary to restore capability.

- (b) A second *supply* contingency involves the concurrent failure of two elements, which could comprise *network* equipment or *Generators*.
- (c) In addition, at the discretion of the *Network Operator*, certain high impact but low risk failures such as the failure of a single *zone substation* HV *busbar*, or the failure of a both circuits of a double circuit line, shall be considered as second *contingency events*.

14.3 Equipment capacities

Circuit capacities to be used in determining *supply* adequacy are the appropriate cyclic ratings for *network* equipment.

14.4 Forecast demand

- (a) The forecast area *demand* used for determining *supply* adequacy is the coincident maximum *demand* for the *load* area, *feeder* or *transformer* concerned, with a 50% Probability of Exceedence.
- (b) In calculating the maximum *demand* in clause 14.4(a), allowance shall be made for the coincident effect of *demand* reductions in the *load* area arising from:
 - (1) Any *demand* management initiative controlled by *Power and Water*;

- (2) Any *customer* contracted to *Power and Water* to reduce *demand* upon request;
- (3) The net effect of any embedded *Generation* used to provide a *demand* reduction under an agreement with *Power and Water*; and
- (4) Small scale embedded *Generation* such as solar PV installations.

14.5 Radial *supply* arrangements

- (a) Where restoration of *supply* requires reinstatement or repair, a secure *supply* having an alternative path is not provided. Restoration targets are set out in Table 12.

Table 12 – Radial *supply* restoration targets

Radial <i>supply</i> contingency	Restoration target
For failure of a <i>substation transformer</i>	≤ 36 hours
For failure of a <i>subtransmission line</i>	≤ 6 hours (<i>loads</i> greater than 5MVA)
For failure of a <i>subtransmission line</i>	≤ 12 hours (<i>loads</i> less than 5MVA)

- (b) The restoration times in Table 12 are *Power and Water's* internal targets. They do not represent *customer* guarantees.
- (c) Actual restoration times will be based on ensuring staff safety and being able to access and address the asset related issues.

14.6 *Supply* contingency criteria

The *supply* contingency criteria in the *Network Planning Criteria* have been designed to facilitate the *Network Operator* providing the specified response in the most appropriate and economical manner for the particular circumstances. The response to ensuring that the *supply* contingency criteria are met may include one or more of the following responses:

- Augmentation of the *network*;
- Reduction of *demand* on the *network* using demand management;
- Connection of *generation* within the load area concerned;
- Commercial arrangements with generators to provide *demand* support in contingency conditions;
- Enhanced operational response;
- Enhanced control of *network* configuration;
- Contingency planning, using strategically positioned spare equipment or mobile equipment such as *generators* and transformers.

- (a) The *supply* contingency criteria in this clause 14.6 apply to loads and to groups of loads supplied by the *network* at various voltage levels and locations.

- (b) In determining the relevant supply contingencies to loads and groups of loads, the potential unavailability of:
- (1) elements of the *network* that normally supply those loads;
 - (2) the *generators* that normally supply those loads; and
 - (3) the associated *generator connections*;
- shall all be considered.
- (c) The relative likelihood (frequency) of *supply* contingencies shall also be considered by the *Network Operator*. The *Supply Contingency Criteria* requires that:
- (1) The *equipment* that comprises elements of the system for the supply to loads and groups of loads shall be operated and maintained in such a way that the frequency of equipment unavailability is consistent with good industry practice; and
 - (2) The expected frequency of *supply* contingencies shall be considered by the *Network Operator* when developing options to maintain compliance with the *Supply Contingency Criteria*.
- (d) The *Network Operator* shall aim to meet reliability of *supply* objectives established by the *Regulator*.
- (e) Where the availability of *generation* is a factor in meeting the contingency criteria in a particular load area the *Network Operator* is required to consult with the relevant *Generators* to make appropriate allowance for *Generation Unit* maintenance.
- (f) The *Network Operator* may enter into commercial arrangements with a *Generator* to provide *demand* support in *supply* contingency conditions.
- (g) The *Planning Criteria* in Table 13 apply for the specified *supply* contingencies in CBD and Urban areas.
- (h) The *Planning Criteria* in Table 14 apply for Non-Urban and Remote areas.
- (i) The *Planning Criteria* in Table 13 and Table 14 apply to each load segment within the loads or groups of loads to which the associated *Planning Criterion* applies.

Table 13 - Supply contingency criteria - CBD and Urban areas

Class of supply	Forecast area demand	Minimum demand to be met after:		Notes
		First supply contingency	Second supply contingency	
A	Up to 1MVA	Within 8 hours: area demand	No special provision	Area demand is normally supplied from one source. Restoration of supply requires reinstatement or repair. Includes most HV customer connections and distribution substations. Where a single transformer supplies demand, the area demand may cover the transformer cyclic capacity.
B	Over 1 MVA and up to 5 MVA	(a) Within 3 hours: area demand less 1 MVA (b) Within 8 hours: area demand		Area demand is normally supplied from one source and may have partial to full supply available from an alternative source. Includes most HV feeders, allows for manual field switching.
C	Over 5 MVA and up to 50 MVA	(a) Within 60 minutes: area demand		Area demand is normally supplied from one or more source and will have partial to full supply from an alternative source. Will include many HV feeders and all zone substations. Area demand will be restored with automatic or manual switching of alternative sources of supply.
D	Over 50 MVA	(a) Immediate restoration of area demand	(b) Within time to restore planned outage: area demand (c) Within 5 hours: area demand	Area demand will normally be supplied by more than two alternative circuits with high level automatic and supervisory switching. The time permitted for restoration of supply to the Darwin CBD following a second contingency recognises that manual switching of load on the CBD HV network would be necessary. The second contingency provision is not intended to restrict the period during which maintenance can be scheduled. The provision for a second circuit outage assumes that normal maintenance would be undertaken when demand is less than peak.

Table 14 - Supply contingency criteria - Non-Urban and Remote areas

Class of supply	Forecast area demand	Minimum demand to be met after:		Notes
		First supply contingency	Second supply contingency	
E	Up to 1MVA	Within 12 hours: area demand	No special provision	<p>Area demand is normally supplied from one source. Restoration of supply requires reinstatement or repair.</p> <p>Includes most rural spur connections, HV customer connections and distribution substations.</p> <p>Where a single transformer supplies demand, the area demand may cover the transformer cyclic capacity.</p>
F	Over 1 MVA and up to 5 MVA	(a) Within 6 hours: area demand less 1 MVA (b) Within 12 hours: area demand		<p>Area demand is normally supplied from one source and will have partial to full supply available from an alternative source. Full restoration of supply may require reinstatement or repair.</p> <p>Includes most HV feeders, allows for manual field switching.</p>
G	Over 5 MVA and up to 15 MVA	(a) Within 3 hours: area demand (b) Within 36 hours: area demand		<p>Area demand is normally supplied from more than one source and will have full supply from an alternative source.</p> <p>Includes many zone substations.</p> <p>Area demand will be restored with manual switching of alternative sources of supply. Where area demand supplied from a single source (b) will apply.</p>
H	Over 15 MVA and up to 50 MVA	(a) Within 30 minutes: area demand (b) Within 36 hours: area demand		<p>Area demand is normally supplied from more than one source and will have full supply from an alternative source.</p> <p>Will cover larger zone substations.</p> <p>Area demand will be restored with automatic or remote manual switching of alternative sources of supply. Where area demand supplied from a single source (b) will apply.</p>

15 Steady state criteria

- (a) The steady state criteria define the adequacy of the *network* to supply the *energy* requirements of *Users* within the equipment ratings, *frequency* and *voltage* limits, taking account of planned and unplanned *outages*.
- (b) The steady state criteria apply to the normal continuous behaviour of a *network* and also cover post disturbance behaviour once the *network* has settled.
- (c) In planning a *network* it is necessary to assess the *reactive power* requirements under both extremes of light and heavy *load*, to ensure that the reactive *demand* placed on the *Generators*, be it to absorb or generate *reactive power*, does not exceed the capability of the *Generators* and that system *voltage* levels remain within equipment ratings.
- (d) *Network frequency* will fall if there is insufficient total *Generation* to meet *demand*. Although the reduction in *frequency* will cause a reduction in power *demand*, it is unlikely that this will be sufficient and in the event of a shortfall of *Generation*, *loads* shall be *disconnected* until the *frequency* rises to an acceptable level.
- (e) In the following sub-clauses, the various components of the steady state *Planning Criteria* are defined.

15.1 Real and reactive generating limits

- (a) Limits to the VAr *Generation* and absorption capability of *Generators* shall not be exceeded.
- (b) *Generators* shall be specified and maintained so as to be capable of operating within the normal range of system *voltage* at their point of *connection*.

15.2 Steady state power frequency voltage

The range of steady-state *voltage* at different *voltage* levels of the *power system* under normal operating conditions is set out in this clause.

The *Australian Standard* for low *voltage* was altered in 2000. *Australian Standard* AS 60038-2000 establishes a revised nominal *voltage* of 230/400 V (single/three phase), to match the European standard set out in IEC 60038:1983.

Australian Standard AS 6038-2000 notes that 240/415 V systems shall evolve towards the new standard and a revised *supply voltage* range. *Power and Water* is participating in an Energy Networks Association review of issues associated with the potential migration from a nominal mid- range *voltage* of 240 V to 230 V.

- (a) For *voltages* of 11 kV or more, the *network* shall be planned and designed to maintain a continuous *network voltage* at a *User's connection* not exceeding the design limit of 110% of nominal *voltage* and not falling below 90% of nominal *voltage* during normal and maintenance conditions.

- (b) The *network* shall be designed to maintain the *low voltage* steady state levels within the range set out in Table 15 for *credible contingency events*. These are referenced to the nominal *voltage* of 230/400 V.

Table 15 – Supply voltage range

System condition	Lower range	Upper range
Normal conditions	- 2%	+ 11%
Planned maintenance conditions	- 4%	+ 13%
Unplanned <i>outage</i> conditions	- 6%	+ 15%

- (c) The power *frequency voltage* may vary outside the ranges set out in this clause 15.2 as a result of a *non-credible contingency event*.

15.3 Thermal rating criteria

- (a) It should be noted that the thermal rating limits of equipment might not determine the capability of the *network* in a particular situation. Other factors such as the *voltage* drop or rise, *voltage* stability or system stability may impose a lower limit in certain circumstances.
- (b) The thermal ratings of *network* components shall not be exceeded under normal or emergency operating conditions when calculated on the following basis:
- (1) **Transformers:** Manufacturer's name plate rating, unless specific modelling has been carried out to determine a cyclic rating for the anticipated cyclic *loading* and ambient temperature conditions.
 - (2) **Switchgear:** Manufacturer's name plate rating.
 - (3) **Overhead Lines:** Rating calculated in accordance with ESAA Code D(b)5, and based on:
 - (i) ambient temperature of 35°C in the northern part of the Territory, and 40°C (summer) or 25°C (winter) in the southern part;
 - (ii) wind speed being 0.5 m/s;
 - (iii) solar radiation being 1000W/m² (weathered surface); and
 - (iv) conductor design clearance temperature as defined in ESAA Code C(b)l.
 - (4) **Cables:** Normal cyclic rating, calculated using the Neher McGrath methodology; with
 - (i) maximum operating temperatures of 90°C for XLPE cables;
 - (ii) 70°C for 11 kV paper insulated cable;
 - (iii) 65°C for 11 kV paper insulated, belted cable and 22 kV paper insulated cables and;

- (iv) during an emergency, for a period of up to 12 hours, the maximum allowable operating temperature for paper insulated cables may be increased to 80°C and for XLPE insulated cables to 120°C.

It should be noted that the thermal rating limits of equipment might not determine the capability of the *network* in a particular situation. Other factors such as the *voltage* drop or rise, *voltage* stability or system stability may impose a lower limit in certain circumstances.

15.4 Fault rating criteria

For safety reasons, the fault rating of any equipment shall not be less than the fault level in that part of the *network* at any time and for any normal *network* configuration.

As the system configuration is changed, fault levels may increase over time. New connections to the *network* shall therefore be designed with equipment fault level ratings reflecting modern standards that may exceed existing fault levels.

- (a) The minimum fault levels for equipment to be connected to *Power and Water's networks* are set out in Table 16.

Table 16 – Network equipment fault level ratings

Network voltage level	Fault level rupturing capacity
415 V	31.5 kA where supplied from one <i>transformer</i> ; or 63 kA where supplied from two <i>transformers</i> in parallel
11 kV	25 kA in metropolitan areas; 20 kA in rural areas
22 kV	15 kA
66 kV	31 kA
132 kV	31 kA

- (b) Equipment owned by *Power and Water* and Users *connected* to the *network* shall be designed to withstand these fault levels for 1 second.

16 Stability criteria

- (a) A *power system* is stable if it returns to a steady-state or equilibrium operating condition following a disturbance. This criterion shall hold true for all *loading* conditions and *Generation* schedules, under normal operating conditions, following the loss of any item of *plant*, and for the most severe credible faults.
- (b) In the planning and operation of a *power system*, it is important to consider the potential emergence of a variety of stability problems.

- (c) The *Network Planning Criteria* are designed to ensure that the *network* has a high probability of returning to stable conditions, following all credible *network* disturbances.
- (d) The stability of a *power system* can be classified into a number of categories to facilitate the analysis of stability problems, the identification of contributing factors, and the development of measures to control or prevent instability. Instability can take many different forms and is influenced by a wide range of factors.
- (e) Two broad categories of stability are considered:
 - (1) Angle stability, which mainly involves the dynamics of *Generators* and their associated *control systems*. Angle stability can be further categorised into transient stability and small-signal or steady-state stability. *Frequency* stability is closely related to angle stability.
 - (2) *Voltage* stability, which mainly involves the dynamic characteristics of *loads* and *reactive power* compensation. *Voltage* collapse is perhaps the most widely recognised form of *voltage* instability.

16.1 Transient stability

Transient stability is the inherent ability of a *power system* to remain stable and maintain *network* synchronism when subjected to severe disturbances such as three-phase faults on power lines, loss of *Generation*, loss of a large *load* or other failures. Such large disturbances need to be cleared in order to prevent *network* instability and physical damage to *plant*.

Transient stability is assessed on the basis of the first angular swing following a solid three phase fault or single phase-to-ground fault on one circuit at the most critical location that is cleared by the faster of the two *protection schemes* with all intertrips assumed in service.

16.1.1 Transient stability criteria

- (a) Transient stability is based on the relative rotor angle swing between two or more groups of synchronous machines when subjected to a disturbance. Relative rotor angle swings in excess of 90° may lead to the situation where the rotor angle does not return and increases beyond 180° , resulting in pole slipping or synchronous instability. Transient stability of the *power system* shall be maintained. To ensure transient stability is maintained, due consideration during system studies shall be given to the following:
 - (1) the maximum allowable relative rotor angle swing between any two or more groups of *Generators* on the *network* shall not exceed 180° (after allowing for a safety margin consistent with *good electricity industry practice*);
 - (2) the transient *voltage* dip limit as specified in clause 16.2.6; and
 - (3) the possibility of delayed clearance of faults on the *network*.

- (b) The most severe disturbance is to be selected from the following fault types to determine the stability of the *power system* (with due regard to be taken of reclosing onto a fault):
 - (1) a three-phase-to-earth fault;
 - (2) a single phase to earth fault cleared by *backup protection*;
 - (3) high speed single phase auto-reclosing and
 - (4) sudden *disconnection* of any *plant*, including a *Generation Unit*.
- (c) If the rotor angles between one (or a group) of synchronous machines and the rest of the *Generation Units* on the *network* reaches and/or exceeds 180°, a “pole slip” occurs. This results in loss of synchronism or synchronous instability.

16.1.2 Rotor angle swing

- (a) In general, an initial *Generator* rotor angle swing which does not exceed 120° and with $X_T \leq 1.0$ p.u. is considered stable.
- (b) A rotor angle swing exceeding 120° has only a small margin before pole slipping, and an initial rotor swing angle which is higher than 120° may result in a pole slip or repeated pole slipping which is considered unstable.
- (c) The relative rotor angle concept of synchronous instability is based on the rotor angle between two synchronous machines. In the case of two or more *Generation* groups containing various *Generators* a correlated effect on the *network*, like transient *voltage* dip limits, shall be used to prevent synchronous instability.
- (d) Rotor angle swings in excess of 120° or transient *voltage* dips in excess of 25% can result in the following detrimental effects on the *network*:
 - (1) *Network voltage* collapse; and
 - (2) Motor *load* loss on undervoltage.
- (e) Such impacts on a *network* are not acceptable and enforceable limits need to be used to prevent them.

16.1.3 Fault clearance time

- (a) One of the major factors affecting transient stability is the *fault clearance time*. The *critical fault clearance time* is the longest *time* that a fault can be allowed to remain on the *network* whilst maintaining *network* stability. *Protection* shall be installed to ensure that the *critical fault clearance times* are achieved.
- (b) A three-phase fault or a single-phase to ground fault (whichever is the more severe criterion), cleared by the primary *protection*, is selected by *Power and Water* as the basis for establishing transient stability. These faults shall be cleared within the *critical fault clearance time*.

- (c) Transient stability shall be maintained for faults cleared by the tripping of any *network* element or a *Generator* under the worst possible *network load* or *Generation* pattern.
- (d) Any *plant* leading to *network* instability shall be separated from the healthy *network*.

16.1.4 Rotor angle swing and transient *voltage* dip

- (a) Rotor angle swing is not a practical parameter to be in field measured, but a measurable impact on *Users* is the transient *voltage* dip (TVD) resulting from real power swings.
- (b) Any *Generator* connected to the *distribution network* shall not cause the *Transmission voltage* to exceed the transient *voltage* dip criteria defined in the *Network Technical Code*.

16.1.5 Pole slip *protection*

- (a) The function of pole slip *protection* is to remove an unstable *Generator* from the *network* and prevent the disturbance from causing problems with other *Users*. Pole slip *protection* only removes the pole-slipping *Generator* from the *network* after the machine has slipped at least one pole.
- (b) Pole slip *protection* is to be installed on all *Generation Units* where simulations show that pole slipping is likely following any credible *plant outage* or fault.

16.1.6 Small-signal stability

- (a) A *power system* is small-signal stable for a particular steady-state operating condition if, following any small disturbance, it reaches an equilibrium condition which is identical or close to the pre-disturbance condition. Small disturbances include the continuously changing system *load*, OLTC operations, and minor switching operations.
- (b) Small-signal instability may be oscillatory, where undamped rotor angle oscillations grow to dangerous magnitudes, or monotonic, where rotor angle differences increase in one *direction*. In either case *Generation Units* can fall out of synchronism with each other and pole slipping can occur.
- (c) Small-signal stability is assessed on the basis of the damping design criterion which states that "System damping is considered adequate if, at any credible operating point, after the most critical *single contingency*, simulations indicate that the halving *time* of the least damped electromechanical mode of oscillation is not more than 5 sec. (The 5 sec. halving *time* corresponds to a damping constant of 0.14 Nepers/sec.)."
- (d) Statistical effects shall be taken into account when analysing test results.

16.1.7 Oscillation damping

- (a) All electromechanical oscillations resulting from any small or large disturbance in the *power system* shall be well damped and the *power system* shall return to a stable operating state.
- (b) The damping ratio of the oscillations should be at least 0.5. For inter-area oscillation modes, lower damping ratios may be acceptable but the halving *time* of such oscillations should not exceed five seconds.

16.1.8 Power system stabilisers

- (a) *Power system* simulation studies may indicate the possibility of insufficient damping on the system, and that the best solution to this problem would be the installation of *power system stabilisers*. These are to be installed on those *Generation Units* where they will be most effective in improving overall system damping.
- (b) The stabilising circuits shall be responsive and adjustable over a wide range of *frequency* range, which shall include frequencies from 0.1 Hz to 2.5 Hz. The PSS settings shall be optimised to provide maximum damping.

16.2 Voltage stability criteria

16.2.1 Voltage stability limits

- (a) All necessary steps should be taken to ensure that *voltage* collapse does not occur for the most onerous *outage* of a *transmission element* under credible *Generation* schedules under full *load* conditions. It should also be assumed that 3% of the installed capacitors are unavailable. *Voltage* collapse is associated with a deficit of *reactive power*. Adequate reactive *reserves* based on *power system* studies should be provided (see notes below).

Notes:

- (1) The system *load* to be used in studies is the 1 in 10 year probability forecast.
- (2) All *Generation* with the exception of one unit is to be taken as available with none of the MVAR limits to be exceeded.
- (b) *Voltage* stability is a function of the dynamic characteristics of system *loads*. A *power system* at a given operating state and subject to a given disturbance is *voltage* stable if post-disturbance *voltages* at every point on the system reach equilibrium within satisfactory limits. Disturbances may be small or large, and *time* frames may vary from tenths of a second to several hours.
- (c) *Voltage* instability most commonly results in *voltage* collapse, but may give rise to excessively high *voltage* levels under some conditions.
- (d) Adequate and appropriate *reactive power* compensation shall be provided to ensure that the *power system* is protected against all forms of *voltage*

instability. This can include the use of shunt and series capacitors and / or *reactors, SVCs, synchronous condensers, etc.*

16.2.2 Voltage collapse

- (a) A *power system* undergoes *voltage* collapse if post-disturbance *voltages* are below acceptable limits. *Voltage* collapse may be total (blackout) or partial.
- (b) The possibility of an actual *voltage* collapse depends upon the nature of the *load*. If the *load* is stiff (constant power, such as a synchronous motor) the collapse is aggravated. If the *load* is soft, eg. heating, the power absorbed by the *load* falls off rapidly with *voltage* and the situation is alleviated.

16.2.3 Resonance conditions

- (a) *Voltage* oscillations can arise within a *power system* as a result of resonance conditions. Resonance effects are generally caused by a series resonance between a capacitance and an inductance, for example a *capacitor bank* and the inductive reactance of a *transmission line* or *transformer*.
- (b) *Network* resonant frequencies can exist above and below synchronous *frequency* and a latent resonance can be excited by a variety of *network* disturbances (large or small).
- (c) If resonance is excited following a *network* disturbance, then oscillations appearing as *network voltage* amplitude modulations can arise.
- (d) If the damping mode of the *network* at the resonant *frequency* is positive then the *network* will absorb the oscillation. However, if the damping is negative, the oscillations will build up and lead to supersynchronous (>50 Hz) or subsynchronous (<50 Hz) instability.
- (e) If corrective action (typically in the form of *load shedding*) is not taken, then this form of oscillation can lead to extensive damage to *network* and *customer* equipment.
- (f) Locations with a low fault level and a weak electrical *connection* (usually with impedance higher than 1.0 p.u. to the source) are prone to sub-synchronous oscillations or resonance.

16.2.4 Transient over-voltages

Transient over-*voltages* can arise from normal switching operations and external influences such as lightning strikes. Surge diverters are used where necessary to ensure that the transient over-*voltage* seen by an item of *network plant* is limited to its rated lightning impulse withstand *voltage* level.

16.2.5 Temporary over-voltages

Temporary AC over-*voltages* should not exceed the *time* duration limits given in *Australian Standard AS2926 – 1987* unless specific designs are implemented to ensure the adequacy and integrity of equipment on the *power system*, and that the effects on *loads* have been adequately mitigated.

16.2.6 Transient *voltage* dip criteria (TVD)

After clearing a system fault the *voltage* should not drop below 75% and shall not be below 80% for more than 0.4 seconds during the power swing that follows the fault. The maximum transient *voltage* dip is 25% and the maximum duration of *voltage* dip exceeding 20% is 20 cycles (400ms).

16.3 Frequency stability criteria

- (a) The *frequency* stability criterion relates to the recovery times for excursions of the system *frequency* from the steady state limits.
- (b) To cover for a loss of *Generation Facilities* there are two measures applied to bring back the falling *frequency*:
 - (1) *Spinning reserve*; and
 - (2) *Under frequency load shedding* (UFLS).
- (c) *Under frequency load shedding* relays are installed at zone *substations* to shed *load* at pre-determined levels of *frequency* at or below 49.25 Hz following loss of a major *Generation Unit* or its *interconnection*.
- (d) Following loss of *Generation Facilities*, system *frequency*, depending on *spinning reserve*, may still decline to such levels that the UFLS automatic scheme will be used to reduce *network load* in order to help the *frequency* recovery.
- (e) It is a requirement for *power system security* that 75% of the *power system load* at any *time* be available for *disconnection* under:
 - (1) The automatic control of *under frequency* relays; and
 - (2) Manual or automatic control from *control centres*; and/or
 - (3) The automatic control of *undervoltage* relays.
- (f) In some circumstances, it may be necessary to have up to 90% of the *power system load*, or up to 90% of the *load* within a specific part of the *network*, available for automatic *disconnection*. *Power and Water* will advise *Users* if this additional requirement is necessary.
- (g) Special *load shedding* arrangements may be required to be installed to cater for abnormal operating conditions.
- (h) The settings for *under-frequency load shedding* in the various *regions* throughout the Northern Territory are given in Table 3 of *this Code*.

17 Quality of supply criteria

- (a) *Quality of supply* criteria regulate the *voltage* and current waveforms in the *network* and criteria are established for the following aspects:
 - (1) *Voltage* fluctuation;
 - (2) *System Frequency*;

- (3) Harmonic distortion;
 - (4) *Voltage* unbalance; and
 - (5) *Network reliability*.
- (b) The *networks* are analysed to ensure satisfactory performance, in accordance with the *quality of supply* criteria, whenever a new *User* is *connected* or a complaint from an existing *User* is received.
- (c) The aspects of *quality of supply* that are analysed are:
- (1) *Steady state voltage*;
 - (2) *Voltage* fluctuation; and
 - (3) *Network frequency, on isolated regional networks*.
- (d) Harmonic *voltage* and current and *voltage* unbalance will be analysed depending on the nature of the *load* of the new *User* being *connected*.

17.1 Voltage fluctuation criteria

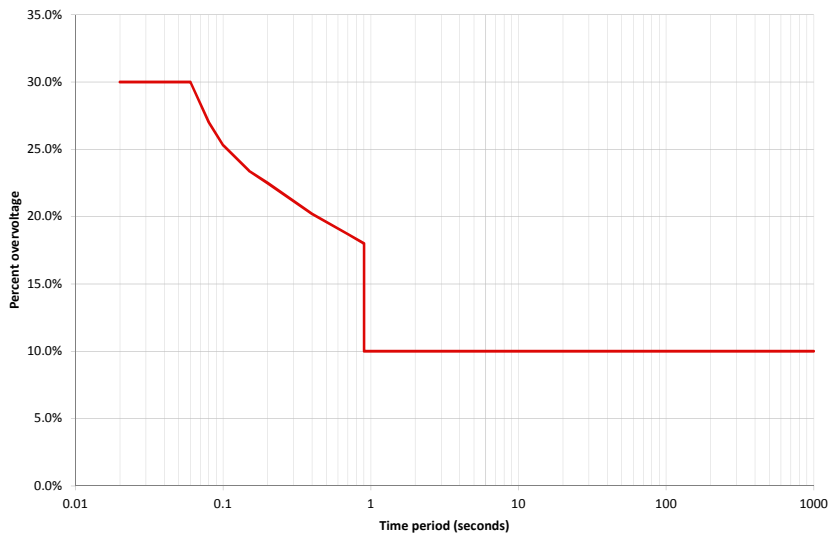
A *voltage* disturbance is where the *voltage* shape is maintained but the *voltage* magnitude varies and may fall outside the steady state *supply voltage* range set out in clause 15.2 of the *Network Planning Criteria*.

- (a) Short duration *voltage* disturbances with durations of up to one minute are termed *voltage* sags and swells.
- (b) Short duration *voltage* disturbances generally arise from faults on the *network* and may not be able to be economically eliminated.

17.1.1 Temporary over-voltages

- (a) As a consequence of a *credible contingency event*, the *voltage of supply* at a *connection point* should not rise above its normal *voltage* by more than a given percentage of normal *voltage* for longer than the corresponding period shown in Figure 4 for that percentage.

Figure 4 – Over voltage limit for contingency events



- (b) *Users' equipment* shall also be designed to withstand these *voltage* levels.
- (c) As a consequence of a *contingency event*, the *voltage of supply* at a *connection point* could fall to zero for any period.

17.1.2 Step changes in voltage levels

- (a) Step changes in the *power system voltage* levels may take place due to switching operations on the *network*. The *step changes in voltage* shall not exceed the limits set out in Table 17.

Table 17 – Step change voltage limits

Cause	Pre-tap-changing		Post-tap-changing (final steady state)	
	≥ 66 kV	< 66 kV	≥ 66 kV	< 66 kV
Routine Switching (1)	±4.0 % (max)	±4.0% (max)	Network voltages shall be between 110% and 90% of nominal voltage	Should attain previous set point
Infrequent Switching (2)	+6%, –10% (max)	+6%, –10% (max)	±10% (max)	Should attain previous set point
Notes: 1 For example, capacitor switching, transformer tap action, motor starting, start-up and shutdown of <i>Generation Units</i> . 2 For example, tripping of <i>Generation Units</i> , loads, lines and other components.				

(b) *Voltage* fluctuation severity is characterised by the following two quantities, which are defined in *Australian Standard AS/NZS 61000.3.7 (2001)*:

- (1) P_{st} - short-term flicker severity term (obtained for each 10 minute period); and
- (2) P_{lt} - long-term flicker severity (obtained from 12 consecutive P_{st} periods for each 2 hour period).

(c) Under normal operating conditions, flicker severity caused by *voltage* fluctuation in the *transmission* and *network* shall be within the planning levels shown in Table 18 for 99% of the *time*.

Table 18 – Flicker severity – planning levels

Flicker Severity Quantity	LV 230/400 V	MV (11-66 kV)	HV (132 kV)
P_{st}	1.0	0.9	0.8
P_{lt}	0.7	0.7	0.6
Notes: 1. These values were chosen on the assumption that the transfer coefficients between MV or HV systems and LV systems are unity. The planning levels could be increased in accordance with AS61000.3.7 (2001). 2. The planning levels in this Table are not intended to apply to flicker arising from contingency and other uncontrollable events in the <i>power system</i> , etc.			

(d) *Voltage* fluctuations for individual *Users* shall be measured at the point of Common Coupling, which is the point of *connection* to other *Users* in the same portion of the *network*.

17.2 Harmonic *voltage* and current distortion

- (a) *Power and Water's* power networks and all *plant* and equipment connected thereto shall be planned and designed to ensure that harmonic *voltages* and currents do not exceed the limits defined in *Australian Standard AS/NZS 61000.3.6 (2001)*.
- (b) For planning purposes the harmonic *voltage* levels shown in Table 19 apply to the respective system *voltage* level.

Table 19 - Harmonic *voltage* distortion limits – planning levels

Order h	Odd harmonics non multiple of 3		Odd harmonics multiple of 3			Even harmonics		
	Harmonic voltage %		Order h	Harmonic voltage %		Order h	Harmonic voltage %	
	LV	≥11 kV		LV	≥11 kV		LV	≥11 kV
5	5.0	2.0	3	4.0	2.0	2	1.6	1.5
7	4.0	2.0	9	1.2	1.0	4	1.0	1.0
11	3.1	1.5	15	0.3	0.3	6	0.5	0.5
13	2.5	1.5	21	0.2	0.2	8	0.4	0.4
17	1.6	1.0	>21	0.2	0.2	10	0.4	0.4
19	1.2	1.0				12	0.2	0.2
23	1.2	0.7				>12	0.2	0.2
25	1.2	0.7						
>25	$0.2 + 0.5 \cdot \frac{25}{h}$	$0.2 + 0.5 \cdot \frac{25}{h}$						

Notes to Table 19:

- This Table is derived from *Australian Standard AS/NZS 61000.3.6 (2001)*.
- The total harmonic distortion (U_t) is calculated from the expression

$$U_t = \frac{U_{nom}}{U_1} \sqrt{\sum_{h=2}^{40} (U_h)^2}$$

Where:

U_{nom} nominal *voltage* of a system

U_1 fundamental *voltage*

U_h harmonic *voltage* of order h expressed as a percentage of the nominal *voltage*.

- The harmonic distortion limits apply to each phase.
- Intermittent harmonic *voltage* distortion is subject to the same limits as continuous harmonic *voltage* distortion.

5. Existing (background) levels of harmonic *voltage* distortion are not included when assessing the harmonic contribution.

17.2.1.1 Inter-harmonic distortion

Inter-harmonic or non-integer harmonic distortion may arise from large convertors or power electronics equipment with Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) convertors interfacing with the *power system*.

A *User's* inter-harmonic *voltage* distortion contribution shall not exceed the planning level of 0.2% specified in section 9 of *Australian Standard AS/NZS 61000.3.6:2001*.

17.2.2 Direct current

- (a) *Plant* and equipment shall comply with the requirements on direct current components as stipulated in clause 3.12 of *Australian Standard AS 3100*. In particular, the direct current in the neutral caused by the *User's plant* and equipment shall not exceed 120mAh per *day*.
- (b) The responsibility of the *Network Operator* for direct current in the neutral outside the limits specified in this clause shall be limited to direct current in the neutral caused by *network* assets.
- (c) *Plant* and equipment at *Users'* premises shall perform to the standards specified in subclause (a).

17.3 Voltage unbalance

- (a) For normal system operation and for planned system *outages*, the *voltage* unbalance at each of *connection points* to the *network* shall not exceed the limits set out in clause 2.4.3 of the *Code*.
- (b) The responsibility of *Power and Water* for *voltage* unbalance outside the limits specified in clause 17.3(a) shall be limited to *voltage* unbalance caused by *network* assets.
- (c) *Users'* equipment shall perform to the standards specified in clause 17.3(a).

17.4 Electromagnetic interference

Power and Water shall design its *networks* to ensure that the electromagnetic interference caused by its *plant* and equipment does not exceed the limits set out in Tables 1 and 2 of *Australian Standard AS 2344*.

18 Construction standards criteria

- (a) *Power and Water* shall construct the overhead portions of its *networks* in accordance with the Electricity Supply Association of Australia publication C(b)1 - "Guidelines for Design and Maintenance of Overhead Distribution and Transmission lines".

- (b) *Power and Water* shall construct the underground portions of its *networks* in accordance with the Electricity Supply Association of Australia publication C(b)2 - "Guide to the Installation of Cables Underground".

18.1 Conductor selection criteria

- (a) *Power and Water* generally uses overhead conductors for *transmission* and *sub-transmission* circuits in order to minimise construction costs. *Power and Water* may use underground cables for such circuits where required by environmental *constraints* and where the additional cost can be justified.
- (b) *Power and Water* uses underground cables for *distribution network* reinforcement and *extension* within the Darwin Metropolitan area, *Regional Centres*, new sub-divisions where in *Power and Water's* opinion they are appropriate, or if required by legislation. Outside these areas *Power and Water* will generally install overhead conductors.
- (c) In designing *extensions* to the *network*, ultimate *load* horizon planning shall be used to establish the *network* concept plan and the initial installation shall conform to that concept plan and use carriers that are appropriately sized. This methodology eliminates the need to disrupt the community in future years as *load* growth occurs and results in the minimum lifetime cost to the community.
- (d) To achieve maximum cost efficiency in the installation of conductors, standard overhead conductor and underground cable sizes have been selected. This results in minimum stock holdings and purchase prices, giving the *User* the least cost *network*.
- (e) The standard conductor size that is equal to, or greater than that required for the reasonably foreseeable *load*, shall be used for each overhead *network extension* or reinforcement.
- (f) The standard cable size that is equal to, or greater than that required for the horizon *load*, shall be used for each underground *network extension* or reinforcement.

19 Environmental criteria

Power and Water's environmental policy states that:

"Power and Water recognises and accepts its environmental responsibilities arising from the provision of power, water and sewerage services.

"Power and Water will seek to minimise environmental impacts and comply with environmental regulations.

"Continual improvement in environmental performance will be sought by Power and Water through:

- Implementing a comprehensive Environmental Management System;
- Minimising the environmental impacts of its operations;
- Promoting individual ownership of environmental care among its people; and
- Consulting with the community on environmental issues.

"Sustainable Development will be pursued by Power and Water through:

- Adoption of integrated resource planning;
- Use of renewable resources;
- Maximisation of long term benefits from non-renewable resources; and
- Promotion and adoption of waste minimisation and recycling practices."

Power and Water commits to the following objectives to fulfil its environmental policy:

- To consult openly and fully with the community and government where Authority activity may affect the environment;
- To ensure that planning and design for new projects and *changes* to existing processes provide for consideration of best environmental practice technology and *timely* impact assessment; and
- To carry out its business in a resource efficient manner.

Power and Water's power networks will be developed so that these commitments are met.

19.1 Social issues

Power and Water shall inform and consult with relevant public bodies and community interest groups and the general public on the planning of new developments and facilities.

19.2 Electromagnetic fields

Recognising the current state of scientific uncertainty regarding adverse health effects from exposure to power *frequency* electric and magnetic fields, *Power and*

Water shall act prudently and design, construct and operate all equipment and facilities to maintain electromagnetic field exposure to the public and *Power and Water* employees at levels within the Interim Guidelines on Limits of Exposure to 50/60 Hz Electric and Magnetic Fields set out in the ARPANSA Radiation Health Series No. 30 standard.

19.3 Land-Use considerations

Power and Water shall avoid, or minimise damage to natural, cultural and historical sites where reasonable and economically practical, consistent with the safe and *reliable* operation of the electricity *supply network*.

19.4 Noise

Power and Water shall comply with the noise limit provisions of the *Environmental Protection Act*.

19.5 Visual amenity

Given that the community and *customers* are sensitive to the visual impact of electrical installations, *Power and Water* shall conduct its electricity *supply* operations in a manner that minimises visual impact.

Part D Attachments

Attachment 1 Glossary of Terms

In this *Code*, unless the contrary intention appears:

- (a) A word or phrase set out in column 1 of the table below has the meaning set out opposite that word or phrase in column 2 of the table below; and
- (b) A word or phrase defined in the *Power and Water Corporation Act* has the meaning given in that Act unless redefined in the table below.

Terminology	Definition
<i>Access Agreement</i>	Means a contract or agreement for the provision of <i>network access services</i> entered into between a <i>network provider</i> and a <i>network User</i> under the <i>Code</i> , and includes an award made by an arbitrator for the same purpose.
<i>Access Applicant</i>	An existing or new <i>network User</i> making an <i>Access Application</i> under clause 10 of the Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Code.
<i>Access Application</i>	An <i>Access Application</i> made under clause 10 of the Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Code, which is described in Attachment 6.
<i>access services</i>	The following services: <i>use of system services</i> ; <i>common services</i> ; <i>connection services</i> and <i>ancillary services</i> .
<i>active energy</i>	A measure of electrical <i>energy</i> flow, being the <i>time</i> integral of the product of <i>voltage</i> and the in-phase component of current flow across a <i>connection point</i> , expressed in Watt-hours (Wh) and multiples thereof.
<i>active power</i>	The rate at which <i>active energy</i> is transferred.
<i>active power capability</i>	The maximum rate at which <i>active energy</i> may be transferred from a <i>Generation Unit</i> to a <i>connection point</i> as specified in an <i>Access Agreement</i> .
<i>active unit protection</i>	Generally, a <i>protection scheme</i> that compares the conditions at defined <i>primary plant</i> boundaries and can positively identify whether a fault is internal or external to the protected <i>plant</i> . Unit <i>protection schemes</i> can provide high speed (less than 150 milliseconds) <i>protection</i> for the protected <i>primary plant</i> . Generally, unit <i>protection schemes</i> will not be capable of providing back up <i>protection</i> .
<i>agreed capability</i>	In relation to a <i>connection point</i> , the capability to receive or send out <i>active power</i> and <i>reactive power</i> for that <i>connection point</i> determined in accordance with the relevant <i>Access Agreement</i> .
<i>ancillary services</i>	The following services: <i>voltage control</i> , <i>reactive power control</i> , <i>frequency control</i> , <i>control system services</i> , <i>spinning reserve</i> and <i>post-trip management</i> .
<i>ancillary services agreement</i>	An agreement covering the provision of <i>ancillary services</i> .

Terminology	Definition
<i>associated load</i>	A <i>load</i> which is normally supplied by a particular <i>Generator</i> and is associated with that <i>Generator</i> by ownership or some contractual arrangement. The <i>load</i> may be remote from the <i>Generator</i> or on-site.
<i>augment, augmentation</i>	In relation to the <i>electricity network</i> , means to enlarge or expand the capability of the <i>electricity network</i> to accept, transport and deliver electricity.
<i>Australian Standard (AS)</i>	The most recent edition of a standard publication by Standards Australia (Standards Association of Australia).
<i>automatic reclose equipment</i>	In relation to a power line, the equipment which automatically recloses the relevant line's circuit breaker(s) following their opening as a result of the detection of a fault in the power line.
<i>backup protection</i>	A <i>protection</i> intended to supplement the main <i>protection</i> in case the latter should be ineffective, or to deal with faults in those parts of the <i>power system</i> that are not readily included in the operating zone of the main <i>protection</i> .
<i>black start capability</i>	In relation to a <i>Generation Unit</i> , the ability to start and <i>synchronise</i> without using <i>supply</i> from the <i>power system</i> .
<i>black start-up facilities</i>	The facilities required to provide a <i>Generation Unit</i> with black start-up capability.
<i>black system</i>	The absence of <i>voltage</i> on all or a significant part of the <i>network</i> following a major <i>supply</i> disruption, affecting one or more <i>power stations</i> and a significant number of <i>customers</i> .
<i>breaker fail protection</i>	In relation to a <i>protection scheme</i> , that part of the <i>protection scheme</i> that protects a <i>User's</i> facilities against the non-operation of a circuit breaker when it is required to open.
<i>busbar</i>	A common <i>connection point</i> in a <i>power station substation</i> or a <i>transmission network substation</i> .
<i>business day</i>	Any <i>day</i> other than a <i>Saturday</i> , <i>Sunday</i> , or <i>day</i> that is a public holiday in the City of Darwin.
<i>capacitor bank, capacitor</i>	A type of static electrical equipment used to generate <i>reactive power</i> and therefore support <i>voltage</i> levels on <i>network</i> elements.
<i>cascading outage</i>	The occurrence of an uncontrollable succession of <i>outages</i> , each of which is initiated by conditions (eg. instability or <i>overloading</i>) arising or made worse as a result of the event preceding it.
<i>change</i>	Includes amendment, alteration, addition or deletion.
<i>check metering installation</i>	A <i>metering</i> installation which may be used as a source of <i>metering</i> data for validation, substitution or account estimation as provided in clause 10 of this <i>Code</i> .
<i>circuit breaker failure</i>	A circuit breaker will be deemed to have failed if, having received a trip signal from a <i>protection scheme</i> , it fails to interrupt fault current within its design operating <i>time</i> .
<i>Code, Technical Code</i>	This <i>Code</i> called the <i>Technical Code</i> .
<i>Code commencement date</i>	The date given in clause 1.4 of this <i>Code</i> .
<i>commitment</i>	The commencement of the process of starting up and <i>synchronising</i>

Terminology	Definition
<i>common services</i>	a <i>Generation Unit</i> to the <i>power system</i> . A <i>network service</i> that ensures the integrity of the <i>electricity network</i> and benefits all <i>Users</i> and that cannot be practically be allocated to <i>Users</i> on a locational basis.
<i>complementary</i>	In relation to <i>protection</i> , two <i>protection schemes</i> are said to be <i>complementary</i> when, in combination, they provide dependable clearance of faults on <i>plant</i> within a specified <i>time</i> , but with any single failure to operate of the <i>secondary plant</i> , fault clearance may be delayed until the nature of the fault <i>changes</i> .
<i>connect, connection</i>	Means to establish an effective link via installation of the necessary <i>connection</i> equipment.
<i>connection asset</i>	Means all of the electrical equipment that is used only in order to transfer electricity to or from the <i>electricity network</i> at the relevant <i>connection point</i> and includes any <i>transformers</i> or switchgear at the relevant point or which is installed to support or to provide backup to such electrical equipment as are necessary for that transfer.
<i>connection point</i>	A point at which electricity is transferred to or from an <i>electricity network</i> .
<i>connection services</i>	In relation to a <i>connection point</i> , means the establishment and maintenance of that <i>connection point</i> .
<i>constraint, constrained</i>	A limitation on the capability of a <i>network, load</i> or a <i>Generation Unit</i> preventing it from either transferring, consuming or generating the level of electrical power which would otherwise be available if the limitation was removed.
<i>contingency capacity reserve</i>	Actual active and <i>reactive energy</i> capacity, <i>interruptible load</i> arrangements and other arrangements organised to be available to be utilised on the actual occurrence of one or more <i>contingency events</i> to allow the restoration and maintenance of <i>power system security</i> .
<i>contingency event</i>	An event affecting the <i>power system</i> which the <i>Network Operator</i> expects would be likely to involve the failure or removal from operational service of a <i>Generation Unit</i> or <i>network</i> element.
<i>control centre</i>	The <i>facility</i> used by the <i>Power System Controller</i> for directing the minute to minute operation of the <i>power system</i> .
<i>controller</i>	A person employed by a <i>Power System Controller</i> engaged in the activities of controlling the transfer of electrical <i>energy</i> at a <i>connection point</i> .
<i>control system</i>	Means of monitoring and controlling the operation of the <i>power system</i> or equipment including <i>Generation Units</i> connected to a <i>network</i> .
<i>control system services</i>	The 24-hour control of the <i>power system</i> through monitoring, switching and <i>dispatch</i> which is provided through <i>control centres</i> and SCADA and communication equipment.

Terminology	Definition
<i>credible contingency event</i>	A <i>contingency event</i> the occurrence of which the <i>Network Operator</i> considers to be reasonably possible in the surrounding circumstances.
<i>critical fault clearance time</i>	Refers to the maximum <i>total fault clearance time</i> that the <i>power system</i> can withstand without one or both of the following conditions arising: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Instability (refer to clause 2.6); and • Unacceptable disturbance of <i>power system voltage</i> or <i>frequency</i>.
<i>critical single credible contingency event</i>	A single <i>credible contingency event</i> considered by the <i>Network Operator</i> , in particular circumstances, to have the potential for the most significant impact on the <i>power system</i> at that <i>time</i> . This would generally be the instantaneous loss of the largest <i>Generation Unit</i> or a fault on a <i>network</i> element on the <i>power system</i> . However, this may involve the consideration by the <i>Network Operator</i> of the impact of the loss of any <i>interconnection</i> under abnormal conditions.
<i>credible contingency</i>	An individual <i>credible contingency event</i> for which a <i>User</i> adversely affected by the event would reasonably expect, under normal conditions, the design or operation of the relevant part of the meshed <i>power system</i> would adequately cater, so as to avoid significant disruption to <i>power system security</i> .
<i>current rating</i>	The maximum current that may be permitted to flow (under defined conditions) through a power line or other item of equipment that forms part of a <i>power system</i> .
<i>current transformer (CT)</i>	A <i>transformer</i> for use with meters and/or <i>protection</i> devices in which the current in the secondary winding is, within prescribed error limits, proportional to and in phase with the current in the primary winding.
<i>customer</i>	A person who purchases electricity supplied through a <i>network</i> .
<i>day</i>	Unless otherwise specified, the 24 hour period beginning and ending at midnight Australian Central Standard <i>Time</i> .
<i>decommission, decommissioning</i>	In respect of an item of <i>plant</i> or a <i>Generation Unit</i> , ceasing to operate and being <i>disconnected</i> from a <i>network</i> .
<i>derogation</i>	Modification, variation or exemption to one or more provisions of the <i>Code</i> in relation to a <i>User</i> according to clause 12.
<i>de-synchronising/ de-synchronisation</i>	The act of <i>disconnection</i> of a <i>Generation Unit</i> from the <i>power system</i> , normally under controlled circumstances.
<i>differing principle</i>	Two <i>protection schemes</i> are said to be of <i>differing principle</i> when their functioning is based on different measurement or operating methods, or use similar principles but have been designed and manufactured by different organisations.

Terminology	Definition
<i>direction</i>	A <i>direction</i> issued by the <i>Network Operator</i> or <i>Power System Controller</i> to any <i>User</i> requiring the <i>User</i> to do any act or thing which the <i>Network Operator</i> or <i>Power System Controller</i> considers necessary to maintain or re-establish <i>power system security</i> or to maintain or re-establish the <i>power system</i> in a <i>reliable</i> operating state in accordance with this <i>Code</i> .
<i>disconnection, disconnect, disconnected, disconnecting</i>	In respect of a <i>connection point</i> or item of <i>plant</i> , means to operate switching equipment so as to prevent the transfer of electricity through the <i>connection point</i> or item of <i>plant</i> .
<i>dispatch</i>	The act of committing to service all or part of the <i>Generation</i> available from a <i>scheduled Generation Unit</i> .
<i>distribution system, distribution network</i>	That part or those parts of the <i>electricity network</i> used for transporting electricity at nominal <i>voltages</i> of less than 66 kV and at a nominal <i>frequency</i> of 50Hz.
<i>dynamic performance</i>	The response and behaviour of <i>networks</i> and facilities which are <i>connected</i> to the <i>networks</i> when the normal operating state of the <i>power system</i> is disturbed.
<i>electrical energy loss</i>	<i>Energy</i> loss incurred in the production, transportation and/or use of electricity.
<i>electricity network</i>	The <i>connection assets</i> and <i>network system assets</i> which together are operated by the <i>network provider</i> for the purposes of transporting electricity from <i>Generators</i> of electricity to a transfer point or to consumers of electricity.
<i>electricity transmission capacity</i>	The capacity of the <i>transmission network</i> to transmit power between two or more points under the full range of operating conditions likely to be experienced in service.
<i>embedded Generator</i>	A <i>Generator</i> which supplies on-site <i>loads</i> or <i>distribution network loads</i> and is <i>connected</i> either indirectly (ie. via the <i>distribution network</i>) or directly to the <i>transmission network</i> .
<i>energise/energisation</i>	The act of operation of switching equipment or the start-up of a <i>Generation Unit</i> , which results in there being a non-zero <i>voltage</i> beyond a <i>connection point</i> or part of the <i>network</i> .
<i>energy</i>	<i>Active energy</i> and/or <i>reactive energy</i> .
<i>energy data</i>	The data that results from the measurement of the flow of electricity in a power conductor. The measurement is carried out at a <i>metering point</i> .
<i>excitation control system</i>	In relation to a <i>Generation Unit</i> , the automatic <i>control system</i> that provides the field excitation for the <i>Generator</i> of a <i>Generation Unit</i> (including excitation limiting devices and any <i>power system stabiliser</i>).
<i>extension</i>	The capital investment associated with the designing, constructing, installing and commissioning of the <i>electricity network assets</i> required to <i>connect a User</i> to the <i>electricity network</i> .

Terminology	Definition
facility	A generic term associated with the apparatus, equipment, buildings and necessary associated supporting resources provided at, typically: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a <i>power station</i> or <i>Generation Unit</i>, including start-up facilities; • a <i>substation</i> or <i>power station substation</i>; • a <i>control centre</i>.
fault clearance time	The <i>time</i> interval between the occurrence of a fault and the fault clearance.
financial year	A period commencing on 1 September in one calendar year and terminating on 30 June in the following calendar year.
frequency	For alternating current electricity, the number of cycles occurring in each second. The term Hertz (Hz) corresponds to cycles per second.
frequency operating standards	The <i>frequency</i> standards set out in clauses 2.2, and 2.4 of this <i>Code</i> .
frequency response mode	The mode of operation of a <i>Generation Unit</i> which allows automatic <i>changes</i> to the <i>generated</i> power when the <i>frequency</i> of the <i>power system</i> changes.
generated	In relation to a <i>Generation Unit</i> , the amount of electrical <i>energy</i> produced by the <i>Generation Unit</i> as measured at its terminals.
Generating System	A system comprising one or more <i>Generation Units</i> .
Generator, Generation Unit/Facilities	An electricity generator, and all related equipment essential to the generator's operation, which supplies electricity into an electricity network and together function as a single entity.
Generation	The production of electrical <i>energy</i> by converting another form of <i>energy</i> in a <i>Generation Unit</i> .
generation centre	A geographically concentrated area containing a <i>Generation Unit</i> or <i>Generation Units</i> with significant combined generating capability.
Generator User	A person who has been granted access to the electricity network by the network provider and who supplies electricity into the electricity network at an entry point.
good electricity industry practice	The exercise of that degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight that reasonably would be expected from a significant proportion of operators of facilities forming part of a <i>power system</i> for the <i>Generation</i> , <i>transmission distribution</i> and <i>supply</i> of electricity comparable to those applicable to the relevant <i>facility</i> consistent with applicable laws, the <i>Access Code</i> , the <i>Technical Code</i> , licences, industry <i>Codes</i> , <i>reliability</i> , safety and environmental <i>protection</i> .
governor system	The automatic <i>control system</i> which regulates the speed and power output of a <i>Generation Unit</i> through the control of the rate of entry into the <i>Generation Unit</i> of the primary <i>energy</i> input (for example, steam, gas or water).
instrument transformer	Either a <i>current transformer</i> (CT) or a <i>voltage transformer</i> (VT).

Terminology	Definition
<i>interconnection, interconnector, interconnect, interconnected</i>	A <i>transmission line</i> or group of <i>transmission lines</i> that connects the <i>transmission networks</i> in adjacent <i>regions</i> .
<i>interruptible load</i>	A <i>load</i> which is able to be <i>disconnected</i> , either manually or automatically initiated, which is provided for the restoration or control of the <i>power system frequency</i> by the <i>Power System Controller</i> to cater for <i>contingency events</i> or shortages of <i>supply</i>
<i>intra-regional</i>	Within a <i>region</i> .
<i>Large Generator</i>	A <i>Generator</i> that is not a <i>Small Generator</i> .
<i>large network investment</i>	A proposed investment in augmentation of the <i>network</i> or a non- <i>network</i> alternative with a capitalised net present value in excess of \$5 Million.
<i>load, loading</i>	The amount of electrical <i>energy</i> delivered at a defined instant at a <i>connection point</i> or aggregated over a group of <i>connection points</i> .
<i>load centre</i>	A geographically concentrated area containing <i>load</i> or <i>loads</i> with a significant combined consumption capability.
<i>load shedding</i>	Reducing or <i>disconnecting load</i> from the <i>power system</i> . (See also <i>under frequency load shedding, under voltage load shedding</i>).
<i>local black system procedures</i>	The procedures, described under clause 4.7.9 applicable to a <i>User</i> as procedures approved by the <i>Power System Controller</i> from <i>time to time</i> .
<i>low voltage (LV)</i>	That portion of the <i>network</i> and <i>connections</i> to it operating at a nominal <i>voltage</i> of 230 volts single phase or 400 volts three phase.
<i>maximum fault current</i>	The current that will flow to a fault on an item of <i>plant</i> when <i>maximum system conditions</i> prevail.
<i>maximum system conditions</i>	For any particular location in the <i>power system, maximum system conditions</i> are those which will prevail with the maximum number of <i>Generators</i> and <i>network</i> elements normally <i>connected</i> at <i>times</i> of maximum <i>Generation</i> .
<i>meter, metering, metering equipment</i>	Equipment used to measure and record the rate at which electricity is transferred and the quantity of electricity transferred to and from the <i>network</i> .
<i>minimum fault current</i>	The current that will flow to a fault on an item of <i>plant</i> when present <i>day minimum system conditions</i> prevail.
<i>minimum system conditions</i>	For any particular location in the <i>power system, minimum system conditions</i> are those which will prevail with the least number of <i>Generators</i> and <i>network</i> elements normally <i>connected</i> at <i>times</i> of minimum <i>Generation</i> , in combination with one <i>primary plant outage</i> . The <i>primary plant outage</i> shall be taken to be that which, in combination with the minimum <i>Generation</i> , leads to the lowest fault current at the particular location for the fault type under consideration.
<i>monitoring equipment</i>	The testing instruments and devices used to record the performance of <i>plant</i> for comparison with expected performance.

Terminology	Definition
month	Unless otherwise specified, the period beginning at 12.00 am on the “relevant commencement date” and ending at 12.00 am on the date in the “next calendar <i>month</i> ” corresponding to the commencement date of the period. If the “relevant commencement date” is the 29th, 30th or 31st and this date does not exist in the “next calendar <i>month</i> ”, then the end date in the “next calendar <i>month</i> ” shall be taken as the last <i>day</i> of that <i>month</i> .
nameplate rating	The maximum continuous output or consumption in MW or MVA of an item of equipment as specified by the manufacturer.
NATA	National Association of Testing Authorities.
network	See definition for <i>electricity network</i> .
Network Access Code	
network capability	The capability of the <i>network</i> or part of the <i>network</i> to transfer electrical <i>energy</i> from one location to another.
network losses	The <i>energy</i> loss incurred in the transportation of electricity from an entry or transfer point to an exit point or another transfer point on an <i>electricity network</i> .
Network Management Plan	<p>A report prepared and published annually by the <i>Network Operator</i>. Amongst other things, this report contains the following details:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • network limitations; • potential non-network and network solutions for small network investments; and • potential non-network and network solutions for large network investments.
Network Operator	A body defined as a “ <i>network provider</i> ” in the <i>Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Act</i> as in force at 1 February 2011. The Network Operator provides <i>access services</i> in respect of Power and Water’s electricity network.
Network Operator’s metering manuals	Specifications prepared by the <i>Network Operator</i> for equipment including <i>revenue metering</i> and communications enclosures, indoor and outdoor <i>revenue metering</i> units (<i>VTs</i> and <i>CTs</i> plus enclosure), <i>CTs</i> , <i>VTs</i> , marshalling boxes and wiring.
Network Planning Criteria	Criteria consistent with this <i>Code</i> prepared by the <i>Network Operator</i> which include the following: contingency criteria; steady-state criteria; stability criteria (transient, dynamic, <i>voltage</i> , and <i>frequency</i>); <i>quality of supply</i> criteria (<i>voltage</i> limits, <i>voltage</i> fluctuation, system <i>frequency</i> , harmonic <i>voltage</i> , harmonic current, <i>voltage</i> unbalance, electro-magnetic interference) and environmental criteria.
nomenclature standards	The standards approved by the <i>Network Operator</i> relating to numbering, terminology and abbreviations used for information transfer by <i>Users</i> as provided for in clause 4.9.
non-credible contingency event	A <i>contingency event</i> other than a <i>credible contingency event</i> . It means a <i>contingency event</i> in relation to which, in the circumstances, the probability of occurrence is considered by the

Terminology	Definition
	<i>Network Operator</i> to be very low.
normal operating frequency band	In relation to the <i>frequency</i> of the <i>power system</i> , means the range specified in clause 2.2.1.
normal operating frequency excursion band	In relation to the <i>frequency</i> of the <i>power system</i> , means the range specified as being acceptable for infrequent and momentary excursions of <i>frequency</i> outside the <i>normal operating frequency band</i> being the range specified in clause 2.2.1.
operational communication	A communication concerning the arrangements for, or actual operation of the <i>power system</i> in accordance with the <i>Code</i> .
outage	Any planned or unplanned full or partial unavailability of <i>plant</i> or equipment.
peak load	Maximum <i>load</i> .
plant	Includes all equipment involved in generating, utilising or transmitting electrical <i>energy</i> .
post-trip management	The maintenance of system security in the aftermath of trips.
Power and Water Corporation	The body corporate established under the <i>Government Owned Corporations Act</i> as in force at 1 February 2011.
Power system security responsibilities	The responsibilities described in clause 4.3.
power factor	The ratio of the <i>active power</i> to the apparent power at a point.
power station	In relation to a <i>Generator</i> , a <i>facility</i> in which any of that <i>Generator's Generation Units</i> are located.
power system	The <i>Generation</i> facilities and <i>electricity network</i> facilities which together are integral to the <i>supply</i> of electricity, operated as an integrated arrangement.
Power System Controller	See definition in the Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Act as in force at 1 February 2011. The power system controller controls the day-to-day dispatch of generators and associated ancillary services and the maintains power system security.
power system operating procedures	The procedures to be followed by <i>Users</i> in carrying out operations and /or maintenance activities on or in relation to primary and <i>secondary equipment connected</i> to or forming part of the <i>power system</i> or <i>connection points</i> , as described in clause 4.6.
power system security	The safe scheduling, operation and control of the <i>power system</i> on a continuous basis in accordance with the principles set out in clause 4.2.3.
power system stabiliser	An auxiliary control device <i>connected</i> to an <i>excitation control system</i> to provide additional feedback signals to reduce <i>power system</i> oscillations.
power transfer	The instantaneous rate at which <i>active energy</i> is transferred between <i>connection points</i> .
power transfer capability	The maximum permitted <i>power transfer</i> through a <i>network</i> or part thereof.
primary equipment, primary plant	Refers to apparatus which conducts <i>power system load</i> or conveys <i>power system voltage</i> .

Terminology	Definition
protection	Used to describe the concept of detecting, limiting and removing the effects of <i>primary plant</i> or <i>primary equipment</i> faults from the <i>power system</i> . Also used to refer to the apparatus required to achieve this function.
protection apparatus	Includes all relays, meters, power circuit breakers, <i>synchronisers</i> and other control devices necessary for the proper and safe operation of the <i>power system</i> .
protection scheme	A collection of one or more sets of <i>protection</i> for the purpose of protecting facilities and the <i>electricity network</i> from damage due to an electrical or mechanical fault or due to certain conditions of the <i>power system</i> .
protection system	A system which includes all the <i>protection schemes</i> applied to the system.
quality of supply	Refers to, with respect to electricity, technical attributes to a standard referred to in clause 2.4, unless otherwise stated in this <i>Code</i> or an <i>Access Agreement</i> .
ramp rate	The rate of <i>change</i> of electrical power produced from a <i>Generation Unit</i> .
reactive energy	A measure, in var-hours (VARh) of the alternating <i>exchange</i> of stored <i>energy</i> in inductors and capacitors, which is the <i>time-integral</i> of the product of <i>voltage</i> and the out-of-phase component of current flow across a <i>connection point</i> .
reactive plant	<i>Plant</i> which is normally specifically provided to be capable of providing or absorbing <i>reactive power</i> and includes the <i>plant</i> identified in clause 3.6.7.
reactive power	The rate at which <i>reactive energy</i> is transferred. <i>Reactive power</i> is a necessary component of alternating current electrical power which is separate from <i>active power</i> and is predominantly consumed in the creation of magnetic fields in motors and <i>transformers</i> and produced by <i>plant</i> such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • alternating current <i>Generators</i>; • capacitors, including the capacitive effect of power lines; and • <i>synchronous condensers</i>.
reactive power capability	The maximum rate at which <i>reactive energy</i> may be transferred from a <i>Generation Unit</i> to a <i>connection point</i> as specified in an <i>Access Agreement</i> .
reactive power reserve	Unutilised sources of <i>reactive power</i> arranged to be available to cater for the possibility of the unavailability of another source of <i>reactive power</i> or increased requirements for <i>reactive power</i> .
reactive power support/ reactive support	The provision of <i>reactive power</i> .
reactor	A device, similar to a <i>transformer</i> , specifically arranged to be <i>connected</i> into the <i>network</i> during periods of low <i>load demand</i> or low <i>reactive power demand</i> to counteract the natural capacitive effects of long <i>transmission lines</i> in generating excess <i>reactive</i>

Terminology	Definition
reconnection	<i>power</i> and so correct any <i>voltage</i> effects during these periods. In respect of a <i>connection point</i> , means to operate switching equipment so as to restore the transfer of electricity through the <i>connection point</i> .
region, regional	An area determined by the <i>Network Operator</i> , being an area served by a particular part of the <i>transmission network</i> containing one or more major <i>load centres</i> or <i>generation centres</i> or both.
regulating duty	In relation to a <i>Generation Unit</i> , the duty to have its <i>generated</i> output adjusted frequently so that any <i>power system frequency</i> variations can be corrected.
reliability	The probability of a system, device, <i>plant</i> or equipment performing its function adequately for the period of <i>time</i> intended, under the operating conditions encountered.
reliable	The expression of a recognised degree of confidence in the certainty of an event or action occurring when expected.
remote back up protection	Refers to the detection and initiation of tripping at a location other than that at which the main <i>protection scheme</i> of the faulted <i>plant</i> is located. Remote back up <i>protection</i> provides a means of detecting and initiating clearance of <i>small zone faults</i> or fault contributions supplied via failed circuit breakers.
remote control equipment (RCE), remote monitoring equipment (RME)	Equipment installed to enable control or monitoring of a <i>facility</i> from a <i>control centre</i> , including a remote terminal unit (RTU).
representative	In relation to a person, any employee, agent or Consultant of: (a) that person; or (b) a related body corporate of that person; or (c) a third party contractor to that person.
reserve	The <i>active power</i> and <i>reactive power</i> available to the <i>power system</i> at a nominated <i>time</i> but not currently utilised.
revenue meter	A device complying with <i>Australian Standards</i> which measures and records the production or consumption of electrical <i>energy</i> that is used for obtaining the primary source of <i>revenue metering data</i> .
revenue metering installation	A <i>metering</i> installation used for recording the production or consumption of electrical <i>energy</i> .
revenue metering data	The data obtained from a <i>revenue metering installation</i> , the processed data or substituted data.
revenue metering database	A database of <i>revenue metering data</i> .
revenue metering point	The point of physical <i>connection</i> of the device measuring the current in the power conductor.
revenue metering register	A register of information associated with a <i>revenue metering installation</i> as required by clause 10.2.
revenue metering system	The collection of all components and arrangements installed or existing between each <i>revenue metering point</i> and the <i>revenue metering database</i> .

Terminology	Definition
RTU	A Remote Terminal Unit installed within a <i>substation</i> or generating station to enable monitoring and control of a <i>facility</i> from a <i>control centre</i> .
satisfactory operating state	In relation to the <i>power system</i> , has the meaning given in clause 4.2.1.
SCADA system	Supervisory control and data acquisition equipment which enables the <i>Power System Controller</i> to continuously and remotely monitor, and to a limited extent control, the import or export of electricity from or to the <i>power system</i> .
scheduled Generation Unit	A <i>Generation Unit</i> that is <i>dispatched</i> by the <i>Power System Controller</i> .
secondary equipment, secondary plant	Those assets of a <i>facility</i> and the <i>electricity network</i> which do not carry the <i>energy</i> being traded, but which are required for control, <i>protection</i> or operation of assets that carry such <i>energy</i> .
secondary plant contingency	Any single failure of <i>secondary plant</i> .
secure operating state	In relation to the <i>power system</i> has the meaning given in clause 5.2.2.
sensitivity	In relation to <i>protection schemes</i> , has the meaning in clause 6.1.6.1.
settlements	The activity of producing bills and credit notes for <i>Users</i> .
single contingency	In respect of a <i>network</i> , a sequence of related events which result in the removal from service of one line, <i>transformer</i> or other item of <i>plant</i> . The sequence of events may include the application and clearance of a fault of defined severity.
small network investment	A proposed investment in augmentation of the <i>network</i> or a non- <i>network</i> alternative with a capitalised net present value in excess of \$1 Million that is not a <i>large network investment</i> .
Small Generator	A <i>Generation Unit</i> or group <i>Generation Units</i> with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) aggregate rated capacity of no more than 2 MW or 10% of the minimum <i>demand</i> of an isolated <i>network</i>, whichever is the lesser; (2) <i>connected</i> to the 22 kV, 11 kV or <i>low voltage networks</i>; and (3) not subject to <i>dispatch</i> by the System Operator.
Small Inverter Energy System	A <i>Small Inverter Energy System</i> is a <i>Generation Unit</i> which uses an inverter that changes its direct-current power to alternating current power acceptable for power system connection. The nominal network voltages and maximum energy system capacities for which these requirements apply are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) 230 V single phase 10 kVA (2) 400 V three phase 30 kVA
small zone fault	A fault which occurs on an area of <i>plant</i> that is within the zone of detection of a <i>protection scheme</i> , but for which not all contributions will be cleared by the circuit breaker(s) tripped by that <i>protection scheme</i> . For example, a fault in the area of <i>plant</i> between a <i>current transformer</i> and a circuit breaker, fed from the <i>current transformer</i> side, may be a <i>small zone fault</i> .

Terminology	Definition
<i>spare network capacity</i>	The capacity to transport electricity over a particular <i>electricity network</i> which the <i>network</i> provider assesses is in surplus to the capacity that existing end-use <i>customers</i> forecast will be required to satisfy their reasonably foreseeable requirements for the transport of electricity.
<i>spinning reserve</i>	The ability to immediately and automatically increase <i>Generation</i> or reduce <i>demand</i> in response to a fall in <i>frequency</i> .
<i>standby power</i>	The amount of electrical <i>energy</i> which could be supplied to a <i>load User</i> in accordance with the terms of a standby <i>Generation</i> agreement.
<i>static excitation system</i>	An <i>excitation control system</i> in which the power to the rotor of a <i>synchronous Generation Unit</i> is transmitted through high power solid-state electronic devices.
<i>static var compensator</i>	A device specifically provided on a <i>network</i> to provide the ability to generate and absorb <i>reactive power</i> and to respond automatically and rapidly to <i>voltage</i> fluctuations or <i>voltage</i> instability arising from a disturbance or disruption on the <i>network</i> .
<i>sub-network</i>	A particular portion of the <i>network</i> .
<i>substation</i>	A <i>facility</i> at which lines are switched for operational purposes. May include one or more <i>transformers</i> so that some <i>connected</i> lines operate at different nominal <i>voltages</i> to others.
<i>supply, supplying</i>	The delivery of electricity.
<i>synchronise</i>	The act of <i>synchronising</i> a <i>Generation Unit</i> to the <i>power system</i> .
<i>synchronised</i>	In the case of a <i>Generation Unit</i> , to be <i>connected</i> to and <i>operate</i> at the same <i>frequency</i> as the <i>power system</i> .
<i>synchronising, synchronisation</i>	To electrically <i>connect</i> a <i>Generation Unit</i> to the <i>power system</i> .
<i>synchronous condensers</i>	<i>Plant</i> , similar in construction to a <i>Generation Unit</i> of the <i>synchronous Generator</i> category, which operates at the equivalent speed of the <i>frequency</i> of the <i>power system</i> , specifically provided to generate or absorb <i>reactive power</i> through the adjustment of excitation current.
<i>unsynchronised</i>	In the case of a <i>Generation Unit</i> , to operate <i>disconnected</i> from the <i>power system</i> , or to <i>operate</i> at a different <i>frequency</i> to the <i>power system</i> during an electrical disturbance.
<i>under frequency load shedding</i>	A <i>load shedding</i> scheme designed to automatically disconnect <i>load</i> on the <i>network</i> to restore <i>frequency</i> to the <i>normal operating range</i> .
<i>under frequency relay</i>	The component of an <i>under frequency load shedding</i> scheme that initiates disconnection of the <i>load</i> .
<i>synchronous Generator voltage control</i>	The automatic <i>voltage control system</i> of a <i>Generation Unit</i> of the <i>synchronous Generator</i> category which <i>changes</i> the output <i>voltage</i> of the <i>Generation Unit</i> through the adjustment of the <i>Generator</i> excitation current and effectively <i>changes</i> the <i>reactive power</i> output from that <i>Generation Unit</i> .
<i>synchronous Generator,</i>	The alternating current <i>Generators</i> which operate at the equivalent

Terminology	Definition
synchronous Generation Unit	of the <i>frequency</i> of the <i>power system</i> in its <i>satisfactory operating state</i> .
tap-changing transformer	A <i>transformer</i> with the capability to allow internal adjustment of output <i>voltages</i> which can be automatically or manually initiated and which is used as a major component in the control of the <i>voltage</i> of the <i>networks</i> in conjunction with the operation of <i>reactive plant</i> .
technical envelope	The limits described in clause 4.2.2.
teleprotection signalling	Equipment used to transfer a contact state from one location to another using communications equipment. The equipment used for this purpose will meet the <i>reliability</i> and quality requirements <i>protection</i> equipment.
time	Central <i>Australian Standard Time</i> , as defined by the <i>National Measurement Act, 1960</i> .
total fault clearance time	Refers to the <i>time</i> from fault inception to the <i>time</i> of complete fault interruption by a circuit breaker or circuit breakers.
transformer	A <i>plant</i> or device that reduces or increases the <i>voltage</i> of alternating current.
transformer tap position	Where a tap <i>changer</i> is fitted to a <i>transformer</i> , each tap position represents a <i>change</i> in <i>voltage</i> ratio of the <i>transformer</i> which can be manually or automatically adjusted to <i>change</i> the <i>transformer</i> output <i>voltage</i> . The tap position is used as a reference for the output <i>voltage</i> of the <i>transformer</i> .
transmission element	A single identifiable major component of a <i>transmission network</i> involving: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • an individual <i>transmission</i> circuit or a phase of that circuit; and • a major item of <i>transmission plant</i> necessary for the functioning of a particular <i>transmission</i> circuit or <i>connection point</i> (such as a <i>transformer</i> or a circuit breaker).
transmission line	A power line that is part of a <i>transmission network</i> .
transmission network	The components of the <i>electricity network</i> used for transmitting electricity at nominal <i>voltages</i> of 66 kV or higher and at a nominal <i>frequency</i> of 50Hz.
transmission network connection point	A <i>connection point</i> on a <i>transmission network</i> .
transmission network test	Test conducted to verify the magnitude of the <i>power transfer capability</i> of the <i>transmission network</i> or investigating <i>power system</i> performance in accordance with clause 5.5.
transmission plant	Apparatus or equipment associated with the function or operation of a <i>transmission line</i> or an associated <i>substation</i> , which may include <i>transformers</i> , circuit breakers, <i>reactive plant</i> and <i>monitoring equipment</i> and control equipment.
trip circuit supervision	A function incorporated within a <i>protection scheme</i> that results in alarming for loss of integrity of the <i>protection scheme's</i> trip circuit.

Terminology	Definition
<i>trip supply supervision</i>	<i>Trip circuit supervision</i> supervises a <i>protection scheme's</i> trip supply together with the integrity of associated wiring, cabling and circuit breaker trip coil.
<i>trip supply supervision</i>	A function incorporated within a <i>protection scheme</i> that results in alarming for loss of trip supply.
<i>two fully independent protection schemes of differing principle</i>	Where an item of <i>plant</i> is required to be protected by <i>two fully independent protection schemes of differing principle</i> , such <i>protection schemes</i> shall, in combination, provide dependable clearance of faults on that <i>plant</i> within a specified <i>time</i> , with any single failure to operate of the <i>secondary plant</i> . To achieve this, complete <i>secondary plant</i> redundancy is required including, but not necessarily limited to, <i>current transformer</i> and <i>voltage transformer</i> secondaries, auxiliary supplies, signalling systems, cabling, wiring, and circuit breaker trip coils. Auxiliary supplies include DC supplies for <i>protection</i> purposes. Therefore, to satisfy the redundancy requirements, each fully independent <i>protection scheme</i> would need to have its own independent battery and battery charger system <i>supplying</i> all that <i>protection scheme's</i> trip functions. The <i>protection schemes</i> shall be so chosen as to have <i>differing principles</i> of operation.
<i>under frequency load shedding</i>	Equipment designed to automatically <i>disconnect load</i> from the <i>power system</i> if the <i>frequency</i> falls below a set level.
<i>under voltage load shedding</i>	Equipment designed to automatically <i>disconnect load</i> from the <i>power system</i> if the <i>voltage</i> falls below a set level.
<i>User</i>	A person, whether a <i>load User</i> or a <i>Generator User</i> , who has been granted access to the <i>electricity network</i> by the <i>Network Operator</i> in order to transport electrical <i>energy</i> to or from a particular point.
<i>use of system services</i>	A <i>network service</i> provided to a <i>User</i> for use of the <i>electricity network</i> for the transportation of electrical <i>energy</i> that can be reasonably allocated to a <i>User</i> on a locational basis.
<i>voltage</i>	The electronic force or electric potential between two points that gives rise to the flow of electrical <i>energy</i> .
<i>voltage control</i>	Keeping <i>network voltages</i> within operational limits in normal operation and in the aftermath of trips by automatic regulation of <i>Generation</i> MVAR output or by <i>voltage control</i> equipment such as <i>capacitor banks</i> and automatic tap-changers.
<i>voltage transformer (VT)</i>	A <i>transformer</i> for use with meters and/or <i>protection</i> devices in which the <i>voltage</i> across the secondary terminals is, within prescribed error limits, proportional to and in phase with the <i>voltage</i> across the primary terminals.

Attachment 2 Rules of interpretation

Subject to the *Interpretation Act*, this *Code* shall be interpreted in accordance with the following rules of interpretation, unless the contrary intention appears:

- (a) a reference in this *Code* to a contract or another instrument includes a reference to any amendment, variation or replacement of it;
- (b) a reference to a person includes a reference to the person's executors, administrators, successors, substitutes (including, without limitation, persons taking by novation) and assigns;
- (c) if an event shall occur on a *day* which is not a *business day* then the event shall occur on the next *business day*;
- (d) any calculation shall be performed to the accuracy, in terms of a number of decimal places, determined by the *Network Operator* in respect of all *Users*;
- (e) if examples of a particular kind of conduct, thing or condition are introduced by the word "including", then the examples are not to be taken as limiting the interpretation of that kind of conduct, thing or condition;
- (f) a *connection* is a *User's connection* or a *connection* of a *User* if it is the subject of an *Access Agreement* between the *User* and the *Network Operator*; and
- (g) a reference to a half hour is a reference to a 30 minute period ending on the hour or on the half hour and, when identified by a *time*, means the 30 minute period ending at that *time*.

Attachment 3 Technical details for *connection* and access

A3.1 Introduction

Various clauses of the *Code* require that *Users* submit technical data to the *Network Operator*. This attachment contains schedules which list the typical range of data which may be required. Data additional to those listed in the schedules may be required. The actual data required will be advised by the *Network Operator* at the *time* of assessment of a *network Access Application*, and will form part of the technical specification in the *Access Agreement*.

A3.2 Data categories

Data is *Coded* in categories, according to the stage at which it is available in the build-up of data during the process of forming a *connection* or obtaining access to a *network*, with data acquired at each stage being carried forward, or enhanced in subsequent stages, for example by testing.

A3.2.1 Preliminary system planning data

This is data required for submission with the *Access Application*, to allow the *Network Operator* to prepare an offer of terms for an *Access Agreement* and to assess the requirement for, and effect of, *network augmentation* or *extension* options. Such data is normally limited to the items denoted as Standard Planning Data (S) in the technical data schedules S3.1 to S3.7.

The *Network Operator* may, in cases where there is reasonable doubt as to the viability of a proposal, require the submission of other data before making an access offer to *connect* or to amend an *Access Agreement*.

A3.2.2 Registered system planning data

This is the class of data which will be included in the *Access Agreement* signed by both parties. It consists of the preliminary system planning data plus those items denoted in the attached schedules as Detailed Planning Data (D). The latter shall be submitted by the *User* in *time* for inclusion in the *Access Agreement*.

Registered data

Registered Data consists of data validated and *augmented* prior to actual *connection* as a provision of access, from manufacturers' data, detailed design calculations, works or site tests, etc. (R1); and data derived from on-system testing after *connection* (R2).

All of the data will, from this stage, be categorised and referred to as Registered Data; but for convenience the schedules omit placing a higher ranked *Code* next to items which are expected to already be valid at an earlier stage.

A3.3 Data review

Data will be subject to review at reasonable intervals to ensure its continued accuracy and relevance. The *Network Operator* shall initiate this review. A *User* may

change any data item at a *time* other than when that item would normally be reviewed or updated by submission to the *Network Operator* of the revised data, together with authentication documents, eg. test reports.

A3.4 Data schedules

Schedules S3.1 to S3.7 cover the following data areas:

- (a) Schedule S3.1 - *Generation Unit* Design Data. This comprises *Generation Unit* fixed design parameters.
- (b) Schedule S3.2 - *Generation Unit* Setting Data. This comprises settings which can be varied by agreement or by *direction* of the *Network Operator*.
- (c) Schedule S3.3 – *Generator* data for small *Generation Units*
- (d) Schedule S3.4 – Technical data for *Small Inverter Energy Units*
- (e) Schedule S3.5 - *Network* and *Plant* Technical Data. This comprises fixed electrical parameters.
- (f) Schedule S3.6 - *Plant* and Apparatus Setting Data. This comprises settings which can be varied by agreement or by *direction* of the *Network Operator*.
- (g) Schedule S3.7 - *Load* Characteristics. This comprises the estimated parameters of *load* groups in respect of, for example, harmonic content and response to *frequency* and *voltage* variations.

A3.5 Non synchronous Generators

A *Generator* that *connects* a *Generation Unit*, that is not a *synchronous Generation Unit*, shall be given exemption from complying with those parts of schedules S3.1 and S3.2 that are determined by the *Network Operator* to be not relevant to such *Generation Units*, but shall comply with those parts of Schedules S3.3, S3.5, and S3.6 that are relevant to such *Generation Units*, as determined by the *Network Operator*.

Codes:

S = Standard Planning Data

D = Detailed Planning Data

R = Registered Data (R1 pre-*connection*, R2 post-*connection*)

Schedule S3.1 *Generation Unit design data*

Symbol	Data Description	Units	Data Category
Power station technical data:			
	<i>Connection point to Network</i>	Text, diagram	S, D
	Nominal <i>voltage</i> at <i>connection to Network</i>	kV	S
	Total Station Net Maximum Capacity (NMC)	MW (sent out)	S, D, R2
At connection point:			
	Maximum 3 phase short circuit infeed calculated by method of AS 3851 (1991):		
	• Symmetrical	kA	S, D
	• Asymmetrical	kA	D
	Minimum zero sequence impedance	% on 100 MVA base	D
	Minimum negative sequence impedance	% on 100 MVA base	D
Individual Generation Unit data:			
MBASE	Rated MVA	MVA	S, D, R1
PSO	Rated MW (Sent Out)	MW (sent out)	S, D, R1
PMAX	Rated MW (<i>Generated</i>)	MW (Gen)	S, D
VT	Nominal Terminal <i>Voltage</i>	kV	S, D, R1
PAUX	Auxiliary <i>load</i> at PMAX	MW	S, D, R2
Qmax	Rated Reactive Output at PMAX	MVA _r (sent out)	S, D, R1
PMIN	Minimum <i>Load</i> (ML)	MW (sent out)	S, D, R2
H	Turbine plus <i>Generator</i> Inertia Constant	MWs/rated MVA	S, D, R1
Hg	<i>Generator</i> Inertia Constant (applicable to synchronous condenser mode of operation)	MWs/rated MVA	S, D, R1
GSCR	Short Circuit Ratio		D, R1
ISTATOR	Rated Stator Current	A	D, R1
IROTOR	Rated Rotor Current at rated MVA and <i>Power factor</i> , rated terminal volts and rated speed	A	D, R1
VROTOR	Rotor <i>Voltage</i> at which IROTOR is achieved	V	D, R1
VCEIL	Rotor <i>Voltage</i> capable of being supplied for five seconds at rated speed during field forcing	V	D, R1
Generation Unit resistance:			
RA	Stator Resistance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1, R2

RF	Rotor resistance at 20° C	ohms	S, D, R1
----	---------------------------	------	----------

Generation Unit sequence impedances (saturated):

Z0	Zero Sequence Impedance	(a+jb)% on MBASE	D,R1
Z2	Negative Sequence Impedance	(a+jb)% on MBASE	D,R1

Generation Unit reactances (saturated):

XD'(sat)	Direct Axis Transient Reactance	% on MBASE	D,R1
XD''(sat)	Direct Axis Sub-Transient Reactance	% on MBASE	D,R1

Generation Unit reactances (unsaturated):

XD	Direct Axis Synchronous Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1, R2
XD'	Direct Axis Transient Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1, R2
XD''	Direct Axis Sub-Transient Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1, R2
XQ	Quadrature Axis Synch Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1, R2
XQ'	Quadrature Axis Transient Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1, R2
XQ''	Quadrature Axis Sub-Transient Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1, R2
XL	Stator Leakage Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1, R2
XO	Zero Sequence Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1
X2	Negative Sequence Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1
XP	Potier Reactance	% on MBASE	S, D, R1

Generation Unit time constants (unsaturated):

TDO'	Direct Axis Open Circuit Transient	Seconds	S, D, R1, R2
TDO''	Direct Axis Open Circuit Sub-Transient	Seconds	S, D, R1, R2
TKD	Direct Axis Damper Leakage	Seconds	S, D, R1, R2
TQO'	Quadrature Axis Open Circuit Transient	Seconds	S, D, R1, R2
TQO''	Quadrature Axis Open Circuit Sub-Transient	Seconds	S, D, R1, R2

Charts:

GCD	Capability Chart	Graphical data	S, D, R1, R2
GOCC	Open Circuit Characteristic	Graphical data	R1
GSCC	Short Circuit Characteristic	Graphical data	R1
GZPC	Zero <i>power factor</i> curve	Graphical data	R1
	V curves	Graphical data	R1
GOTC	MW, MVAR outputs versus temperature chart	Graphical data	D, R1, R2

Generation Unit transformer:

GTW	Number of windings	Text	S, D
GTR _n	Rated MVA of each winding	MVA	S, D, R1
GTTR _n	Principal tap rated <i>voltages</i>	kV/kV	S, D, R1
GTZI _n	Positive Sequence Impedances (each wdg)	(a - jb)% on 100 MVA base	S, D, R1
GTZ2 _n	Negative Sequence Impedances (each wdg)	(a - jb)% on 100 MVA base	S, D, R1
GTZO _n	Zero Sequence Impedances (each wdg)	(a - jb)% on 100 MVA base	S, D, R1
	Tapped Winding	Text, diagram	S, D, R1
GTAPR	Tap <i>Change</i> Range	kV - kV	S, D
GTAPS	Tap <i>Change</i> Step Size	%	S, D
	Tap <i>Changer</i> Type, On/Off <i>load</i>	On/Off	S, D
	Tap <i>Change</i> Cycle <i>Time</i>	Seconds	D
GTVG	Vector Group	Diagram	S, D
	Earthing Arrangement	Text, diagram	S, D
	Saturation curve	Diagram	R1

Generation Unit reactive capability (at machine terminals):

Lagging <i>Reactive power</i> at P _{MAX}	MVA _r export	S, D, R2
Lagging <i>Reactive power</i> at ML	MVA _r export	S, D, R2
Lagging <i>Reactive Short Time</i> capability at rated MW, terminal <i>voltage</i> and speed	MVA _r (for <i>time</i>)	D, R1, R2
Leading <i>Reactive power</i> at rated MW	MVA _r import	S, D, R2

Generation Unit excitation system:

Make		S, D
Model		S, D
General description of <i>excitation control system</i> (including functional block diagram)	Text, diagram	S, D
Rated <i>Field Voltage</i> at rated MVA and <i>Power factor</i> and rated terminal volts and speed	V	S, D, R1
Maximum <i>Field Voltage</i>	V	S, D, R1
Minimum <i>Field Voltage</i>	V	S, D, R1
Maximum rate of <i>change</i> of <i>Field Voltage</i>	Rising V/s	S, D, R1
Maximum rate of <i>change</i> of <i>Field Voltage</i>	Falling V/s	S, D, R1
<i>Generation Unit</i> and exciter Saturation Characteristics 50 - 120%	Diagram	S, D, R1
Dynamic Characteristics of Over Excitation Limiter	Text/ Block diagram	S, D, R2

Dynamic Characteristics of Under Excitation Limiter	Text/ Block diagram	S, D, R2
---	---------------------	----------

Generation Unit load controller (governor):

General description of governor <i>control system</i> (including functional block diagram). Format to be compatible with PSS/E software from Siemens PTI.	Text, diagram	S, D
Maximum Droop	%	S, D, R1
Normal Droop	%	D, R1
Minimum Droop	%	D, R1
Maximum <i>Frequency</i> Dead band	Hz	D, R1
Normal <i>Frequency</i> Dead band	Hz	D, R1
Minimum <i>Frequency</i> Dead band	Hz	D, R1
MW Dead band	MW	D, R1

Generation Unit response capability:

Sustained response to <i>frequency change</i>	MW/Hz	D, R2
Non-sustained response to <i>frequency change</i>	MW/Hz	D, R2
Load Rejection Capability	MW	S, D, R2

Mechanical shaft model:

(Multiple-stage steam turbine Generators only)

Dynamic model of turbine/ <i>Generator</i> shaft system in lumped element form showing component inertias, damping and shaft stiffness. Format to be compatible with PSS/E software from Siemens PTI.	Diagram	S, D
Natural damping of shaft torsional oscillation modes (for each mode)		
• Modal <i>frequency</i>	Hz	D
• Logarithmic decrement	Nepers/Sec	D

Steam turbine data:

(Multiple-stage steam turbines only)

Fraction of power produced by each stage:

Symbols	KHP	Per unit of Pmax	D
	KIP		
	KLP1		
	KLP2		

Stage and reheat *time* constants:

Symbols	THP	Seconds	D
	TRH		
	TIP		
	TLP1		
	TLP2		
Turbine <i>frequency</i> tolerance curve		Diagram	S, D, R1

Gas turbine data:

HRS	Waste heat recovery boiler <i>time</i> constant (where applicable eg. for <i>cogeneration</i> equipment)	Seconds	D
	MW output versus turbine speed (47-52 Hz)	Diagram	D, R1, R2
	Type of turbine (heavy industrial, aero derivative etc.)	Text	S
	Number of shafts		S,D
	Gearbox Ratio		D
	Fuel type (gas, liquid)	Text	S,D
	Base <i>load</i> MW vs temperature	Diagram	D
	<i>Peak load</i> MW vs temperature	Diagram	D
	Rated exhaust temperature	°C	S,D
	Controlled exhaust temperature	°C	S,D,R1
	Turbine <i>frequency</i> tolerance capability	Diagram	D
	Turbine compressor surge map	Diagram	D

Hydraulic turbine data

Required data will be advised by the *Network Operator*

Wind farm/wind turbine data

	A typical 24 hour power curve measured at 15-minute intervals or better if available;		S, D, R1
	maximum kVA output over a 60 second interval		S, D,R1
	Long-term flicker factor for <i>Generation Unit</i>		S, D, R1
	Long term flicker factor for wind farm		S,D,R1
	Maximum output over a 60 second interval kVA		S,D,R1
	Harmonics current spectra	A	S,D,R1
	Power curve MW vs. wind speed	Diagram	D
	Spatial Arrangement of wind farm	Diagram	D
	Startup profile MW, MVA _r vs <i>time</i> for individual Wind Turbine Unit and Wind farm	Diagram	D

Total			
	Low Wind Shutdown profile MW, MVA _r vs <i>time</i> for individual Wind Turbine Unit and Wind farm Total	Diagram	D
	MW, MVA _r vs <i>time</i> profiles for individual Wind Turbine Unit under normal ramp up and ramp down conditions.	Diagram	D
	High Wind Shutdown profile MW, MVA _r vs <i>time</i> for individual Wind Turbine Unit and Wind farm Total	Diagram	D

Induction *Generation Unit* data

	Make		
	Model		
	Type (squirrel cage, wound rotor, doubly fed)		
MBASE	Rated MVA	MVA	S,D,R1
	PSO Rated MW (Sent out)	MW	S,D,R1
	P _{MAX} Rated MW (<i>generated</i>)	MW	D
	V _T Nominal Terminal Voltage kV	S,D,R1	
	Synchronous Speed	rpm	S,D,R1
	Rated Speed	rpm	S,D,R1
	Maximum Speed	rpm	S,D,R1
	Rated <i>Frequency</i>	Hz	S,D,R1
Q _{max}	Reactive consumption at P _{MAX}	MVA _r import	S,D,R1
	Curves showing torque, <i>power factor</i> , efficiency, stator current, MW output versus slip (+ and -).	Graphical data	D,R1,R2
	Number of <i>capacitor banks</i> and MVA _r size at rated <i>voltage</i> for each <i>capacitor bank</i> (if used).	Text	S
	Control philosophy used for VAr / <i>voltage control</i> .	Text	S
H	Combined inertia constant for all rotating masses <i>connected</i> to the <i>Generation Unit</i> shaft (for example, <i>Generation Unit</i> , turbine, gearbox, etc.) calculated at the synchronous speed	MW-sec/MVA	S,D,R1
Resistance			
R _s	Stator resistance	% on MBASE	D,R1
R _s	Stator resistance versus slip curve, or two extreme values for zero (nominal) and unity (negative) slip	Graphical data or % on MBASE	D,R1

Reactances (saturated)			
X'	Transient reactance	% on MBASE	D,R1
X''	Subtransient reactance	% on MBASE	D,R1
Reactances (unsaturated)			
X	Sum of magnetising and primary winding leakage reactance.	% on MBASE	D,R1
X'	Transient reactance	% on MBASE	D,R1
X''	Subtransient reactance	% on MBASE	D,R1
Xl	Primary winding leakage reactance	% on MBASE	D,R1
Time constants (unsaturated)			
T'	Transient	sec	S,D,R1,R2
T''	Subtransient	sec	S,D,R1,R2
Ta	Armature	sec	S,D,R1,R2
To'	Open circuit transient	sec	S,D,R1,R2
To''	Open circuit subtransient	sec	S,D,R1,R2

Converter data

Control: *transmission* system commutated or self commutated

Additional data may be required by the *Network Operator*

Doubly fed induction *Generation Unit* data

Required data will be advised by the *Network Operator*

Schedule S3.2 *Generation Unit* setting data

Description Category	Units	Data Category
Protection data:		
Settings of the following protections:		
Loss of field	Text	D
Under excitation	Text, diagram	D
Over excitation	Text, diagram	D
Differential	Text	D
<i>Under frequency</i>	Text	D
<i>Over frequency</i>	Text	D
Negative sequence component	Text	D
Stator over <i>voltage</i>	Text	D
Stator overcurrent	Text	D
Rotor overcurrent	Text	D
Reverse power	Text	D
Stator E/F	Text	D
Rotor E/F	Text	D
Out of step	Text	D
Control Data:		
Details of <i>excitation control system</i> described in block diagram form showing transfer functions of individual elements, parameters and measurement units (in Siemens PTI PSS/E format).	Text, diagram	S, D, R1, R2
Automatic <i>voltage</i> regulator	Text, diagram	S, D, R1, R2
<i>Power system stabiliser</i>	Text, diagram	S, D, R1, R2
Settings of the following controls:		
Details of the <i>governor system</i> described in block diagram form showing transfer functions of individual elements and measurement units (in Siemens PTI PSS/E format).	Text, diagram	S, D, R1, R2
Over excitation limiter	Text, diagram	S, D
Under excitation limiter	Text, diagram	S, D
Stator current limiter (if fitted)	Text, diagram	S, D
Manual restrictive limiter (if fitted)	Text	S, D
<i>Load drop compensation</i> /VAr sharing (if fitted)	Text, function	S, D
V/f limiter (if fitted)	Text, diagram	S, D

Schedule S3.3 *Generator data for small Generation Units*

Power station	Data Category
Address	S, R1
Description of <i>power station</i> , for example, is it a green or brownfield site, is there a process steam or heat requirement, any other relevant information	S
Site-specific issues which may affect access to site or design, eg. other construction onsite, mine site, environmental issues, soil conditions	S, D
Number of <i>Generation Units</i> and ratings (kW)	S, D, R1
Type: eg. synchronous, induction	S, D, R1
Manufacturer	D
Connected to the <i>network</i> via: eg. inverter, <i>transformer</i> , u/g cable etc.	S
Prime mover types: eg. reciprocating, turbine, hydraulic, photovoltaic, other	S
Manufacturer	D
<i>Energy</i> source: eg. natural gas, landfill gas, distillate, wind, solar, other	S
Total <i>power station</i> total capacity (kW)	S, D, R1
<i>Power station</i> export capacity (kVA)	S, D, R1
Forecast annual <i>energy Generation</i> (kWh)	S, D
Normal mode of operation as per clause 3.4.3 of the <i>Network Technical Code</i> ie.	S
(1)continuous parallel operation	
(2)occasional parallel operation	
(3)short term test parallel operation	
(4)bumpless (make before break) transfer	
(i) rapid transfer	
(ii) gradual transfer	
Purpose: eg. power sales, peak lopping, <i>demand</i> management, exercising, emergency back up	S

Schedule S3.4 Technical data for *Small Inverter Energy Systems*

Description	Units	Data Category
Address	Text	S
Number of <i>Small Inverter Energy Systems</i> and ratings	kW	S, D
Manufacturer	Text	D
Connection <i>voltage</i>		
Nominal <i>voltage</i>	V	S, D
Single/three phase	Number	S, D

Schedule S3.5 *Network and plant technical data*

Description	Units	Data Category
Voltage rating		
Nominal <i>voltage</i>	kV	S, D
Highest <i>voltage</i>	kV	D
Insulation co-ordination		
Rated lightning impulse withstand <i>voltage</i>	kVp	D
Rated short duration power <i>frequency</i> withstand <i>voltage</i>	kV	D
Rated currents		
Circuit maximum current	kA	S, D
Rated Short <i>Time</i> Withstand Current	kA for seconds	D
Ambient conditions under which above current applies	Text	S,D
Earthing		
System Earthing Method	Text	S, D
Earth grid rated current	kA for seconds	D
Insulation pollution performance		
Minimum total creepage	mm	D
Pollution level	Level of IEC 815	D
Controls		
Remote control and data <i>transmission</i> arrangements	Text	D
Metering provided by customer		
Measurement <i>transformer</i> ratios:		D
Current <i>transformers</i>	A/A	D
Voltage <i>transformers</i>	V/kV	D
Measurement <i>Transformer</i> Test Certification details	Text	R1
Network configuration		
Operation Diagrams showing the electrical circuits of the existing and proposed main facilities within the <i>User's</i> ownership including <i>busbar</i> arrangements, phasing arrangements, earthing arrangements, switching facilities and operating <i>voltages</i>	Single line Diagrams	S, D, R1

Network impedances

For each item of <i>plant</i> (including lines): details of the positive, negative and zero sequence series and shunt impedances, including mutual coupling between physically adjacent elements.	% on 100 MVA base	S, D, R1
---	-------------------	----------

Short circuit infeed to the network

Maximum <i>Generator</i> 3-phase short circuit infeed including infeeds from <i>Generation Units</i> connected to the <i>User's</i> system, calculated by method of AS 3851 (1991).	kA symmetrical	S, D, R1
The total infeed at the instant of fault (including contribution of induction motors).	kA	D, R1
Minimum zero sequence impedance of <i>User's network</i> at <i>connection point</i> .	% on 100 MVA base	D, R1
Minimum negative sequence impedance of <i>User's network</i> at <i>connection point</i> .	% on 100 MVA base	D, R1

Load Transfer Capability:

Where a *load*, or group of *loads*, may be fed from alternative *connection points*:

<i>Load</i> normally taken from <i>connection point X</i>	MW	D, R1
<i>Load</i> normally taken from <i>connection point Y</i>	MW	D, R1
Arrangements for transfer under planned or fault <i>outage</i> conditions	Text	D

Circuits Connecting Embedded *Generation Units* to the Network:

For all *Generation Units*, all *connecting lines/cables*, *transformers* etc.

Series Resistance (-ve, -ve & zero seq.)	% on 100 MVA base	S, D, R
Series Reactance (-ve, -ve & zero seq.)	% on 100 MVA base	S, D, R
Shunt Susceptance (-ve, -ve & zero seq.)	% on 100 MVA base	S, D, R
Normal and short-time emergency ratings	MVA	S, D, R
Technical Details of <i>Generation Units</i> as per schedules S1, S2, S3.		

Transformers at connection points:

Saturation curve	Diagram	R
------------------	---------	---

Schedule S3.6 *Network plant and apparatus setting data*

Description	Units	Data Category
Protection data for protection relevant to connection point:		
Reach of all <i>protection schemes</i> on lines, or cables	ohms or % on 100 MVA base	S, D
Number of <i>protection schemes</i> on each item	Text	S, D
Total fault clearing <i>times</i> for near and remote faults	ms	S, D, R1
Line reclosure sequence details	Text	S, D, R1
Tap change control data:		
<i>Time</i> delay settings of all <i>transformer tap changers</i> .	Seconds	D, R1
Reactive compensation (including filter banks):		
Location and Rating of individual shunt <i>reactors</i>	MVAr	S, D, R1
Location and Rating of individual shunt <i>capacitor banks</i>	MVAr	S, D, R1
<i>Capacitor bank</i> capacitance	Microfarads	S, D
Inductance of switching <i>reactor</i> (if fitted)	millihenries	S, D
Resistance of capacitor plus <i>reactor</i>	Ohms	S, D
Details of special controls (eg. Point-on-wave switching)	Text	S, D
For each shunt reactor or capacitor bank (including filter banks):		
Method of switching	Text	S
Details of automatic control logic such that operating characteristics can be determined	Text	D, R1
FACTS Installation:		
Data sufficient to enable static and <i>dynamic performance</i> of the installation to be modelled	Text, diagrams, control settings	S, D, R1
Under frequency load shedding scheme:		
Relay settings (<i>frequency and time</i>)	Hz, seconds	S, D
Islanding scheme:		
Triggering signal (eg. <i>voltage, frequency</i>)	Text	S, D
Relay settings	Control settings	S, D

Schedule S3.7 *Load characteristics at connection point*

Data Description	Units	Data Category
For all types of load		
Type of <i>Load</i> eg. controlled rectifiers or large motor drives	Text	S
Rated capacity	MW, MVA	S
<i>Voltage</i> level	kV	S
Rated current	A	S
For fluctuating loads		
Cyclic variation of <i>active power</i> over period	Graph - MW/ <i>time</i>	S
Cyclic variation of <i>reactive power</i> over period	Graph - MVAr/ <i>time</i>	S
Maximum rate of <i>change</i> of <i>active power</i>	MW/s	S
Maximum rate of <i>change</i> of <i>reactive power</i>	MVAr/s	S
Shortest Repetitive <i>time</i> interval between fluctuations in <i>active power</i> and <i>reactive power</i> reviewed annually	s	S
Largest step <i>change</i> in <i>active power</i>	MW	S
Largest step <i>change</i> in <i>reactive power</i>	MVAr	S
For commutating power electronic load:		
No. of pulses	Text	S
Maximum <i>voltage</i> notch	%	S
Harmonic current distortion (up to the 50th harmonic)	A or %	S

Attachment 4 *Metering* requirements

A4.1 General

- (a) *Revenue metering equipment*, other than *revenue meters* and Communications equipment may be provided and installed by the *User* or will be provided and installed by the *Network Operator* at the *User's* request.
- (b) Indoor *revenue metering* units provided by the *Network Operator* will normally be of a type suitable for use with a specific make of switchgear which will vary from *time to time*.
- (c) *Revenue meters* and the communications equipment other than a *connection* to the Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) will be provided and installed by the *Network Operator*. The PSTN *connection* and any isolation required will be provided by the *User*.
- (d) *Revenue metering equipment* will comprise a *revenue metering* unit containing *voltage transformers (VTs)* and *current transformers (CTs)*, or for system *voltages* of 66 kV and 132 kV, free standing post type *VTs* and *CTs* (other than free standing post type *VTs* and *CTs* may be acceptable and each request will be considered), two or more *revenue meters*, cabling, communications equipment, marshalling box and a *revenue meter* enclosure.

A4.2 Installation

- (a) The maximum cable route length between the *CTs* and *VTs* and the *revenue meters* is 80 metres.
- (b) Marshalling boxes located close to the *CTs* and *VTs* will be required for all indoor *revenue metering* units and for all outdoor *revenue metering* units for system *voltages* of 66 kV and 132 kV. Indoor *revenue metering* marshalling boxes will be an integral part of the indoor *revenue metering* unit.
- (c) Prefabricated free standing or wall mounted *revenue meter* enclosures are available from the *Network Operator* or a suitable enclosure may be assembled by the *User*. *Revenue meters* may also be located within a building which has provision for unrestricted 24 hour access for *revenue metering* personnel. It may be located adjacent to the *Network Operator's protection* or SCADA equipment. Preference is for a purpose constructed, ventilated, insulated or naturally insulated room of plan dimensions not less than 2m X 2m which substantially maintains ambient air temperature. If the *Network Operator* is requested to provide a free standing *revenue meter* enclosure and its support frame, the *User* will need to provide a concrete footing as specified in the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.
- (d) Unrestricted, 24 hour access to *revenue metering equipment* by *revenue metering* personnel is required.

A4.3 3-4 wire metering

- (a) Three-wire *revenue metering*, that is, *revenue metering* with three-phase to neutral VTs and two CTs, one in each of the red and blue currents, may be used when the *load* measured by the *revenue metering equipment* is a three-wire *load*. The *load* is three-wire when it comprises a delta-wound *transformer* primary or a star-wound *transformer* primary with the star point not earthed, provided the *load* is not a distributed *load* and is within 2 km of the *revenue metering CTs* and VTs and the system *voltage* is less than 66 kV. All other *revenue metering* will be four-wire, that is, as for three-wire but with an additional CT in the white phase. *Co-Generation revenue metering* will normally be four-wire.
- (b) The *Network Operator* will, if requested by a *User*, advise the *User* whether an installation is 3-wire or 4-wire.

A4.4 Signals

- (a) Signals comprising *energy* usage information may be made available via volt free relay contacts rated to 30V AC or DC at a maximum of 60 mA. These signals comprise momentary relay closures each *time* a given amount of *energy* (kWh) is imported or exported and each *time* a given number of kVARh is imported, the start of each 30 minute *demand* period (or other period if appropriate) and relay closures when the rate *changes* (on-peak or off-peak or shoulder etc.).

A4.5 Accuracy requirements

Table A4.1 - Overall Accuracy Requirements of Revenue metering installation

Type	Energy per meter point (GWh pa.)	Maximum allowable overall error (+/- %) at full load active / reactive	Minimum acceptable class of components	Meter clock error seconds
1	≥ 1000	+0.5 / -1.0	0.2 CT/VT/meter Wh 0.5 Meter VARh	±5
2	100 – 1000	+1.0 / -2.0	0.5 CT/VT/meter Wh 1.0 Meter VARh	±7
3	< 100	+1.5 / -3.0	0.5 CT/VT Meter Wh 2.0 Meter VARh	±10

Note to Table A4.1:

The method for calculating the overall error is the vector sum of the errors of each component part, ie. a - b - c, where:

- a = the error of the *Voltage Transformer* and wiring
- b = the error of the *Current Transformer* and wiring

c = the error of the *revenue meter*.

A4.6 Other *metering* requirements

- (a) Specifications for *revenue meter* and communications enclosures, indoor and outdoor *revenue metering* units (*VTs* and *CTs* plus enclosure), 66 kV and 132 kV *CTs*, *VTs*, marshalling box and wiring are contained in the *Network Operator's metering manuals*.

Attachment 5 Test schedule

The following test schedule is used for specific performance verification and model validation.

A5.1 General

- (a) Recorders should be calibrated or checked prior to use.
- (b) Recorders should not interact with any *plant* control functions.
- (c) Galvanic isolation and filtering of input signals should be provided whenever necessary.

A5.2 Test preparation and presentation of test results

Information/data prior to tests

- (a) a detailed schedule of tests agreed by the *Network Operator*. The schedule should list the tests, when each test is to occur and whose responsibility it will be to perform the test.
- (b) Schematics of equipment and *sub-networks* plus descriptive material necessary to draw up/agree upon a schedule of tests
- (c) Most up to date relevant technical data and parameter settings of equipment as specified in Attachment 3 of this *Code*.

Test notification

- (a) Prior notice of test commencement should be given to the *Network Operator* for the purpose of arranging witnessing of tests.
- (b) The *Network Operator's representative* should be consulted about proposed test schedules, be kept informed about the current state of the testing program, and give permission to proceed before each test is carried out.

Test results

- (a) Test result data shall be presented to the *Network Operator* within 5 *business days* of completion of each test or test series.
- (b) Where test results are not favourable it will be necessary to rectify problems and repeat tests.

A5.3 Quantities to be measured

- (a) Wherever appropriate and applicable for the tests, the following quantities should be measured on the machine under test:

Generator and excitation system

- stator L-N terminal *voltages*
- stator terminal currents

- *Active power MW*
- *Reactive power MVAR*
- *Generator rotor field voltage*
- *Generator rotor field current*
- *Main exciter field voltage*
- *Main exciter field current*
- *AVR reference voltage*
- *Voltage applied to AVR summing junction (step etc.)*
- *Power system stabiliser output*
- *DC signal input to AVR which corresponds to terminal volts*

Steam turbine

- *Shaft speed*
- *Load demand signal*
- *Valve positions for control and interceptor valves*
- *Governor set point*

Gas turbine

- *Shaft speed (engine)*
- *Shaft speed of turbine driving the Generator*
- *Engine speed control output Free turbine speed control output*
- *Generator-compressor speed control output*
- *Ambient/turbine air inlet temperature*
- *Exhaust gas temperature control output*
- *Exhaust temperature*
- *Fuel flow*
- *Governor/load reference set point*

Reciprocating engine

- *Engine crank speed driving the Generator*
- *Type of governor load / speed control*
- *Ambient / charge air / exhaust temperature*

- Fuel flow
- (b) Additional test quantities may be requested and advised by the *Network Operator* if other special tests are necessary.
- (c) Key quantities such as stator terminal *voltages*, currents, *active power* and *reactive power* of the other *Generation Units connected* on the same bus and also *interconnection* lines with the *Network Operator's network* (from control room readings) before and after each test shall also be provided.

Schedule of Tests

Test No	TEST DESCRIPTION		
	General Description	Changes Applied	Test Conditions
C1	Step change to AVR voltage reference with the <i>Generator</i> on open circuit	(a) -2.5% (b) -2.5% (c) -5.0% (d) -5.0%	nominal stator terminal volts
C2	Step change to AVR voltage reference with the <i>Generator</i> connected to the system at the following outputs 50% rated MW 100% rated MW	(a) -1.0% (b) -1.0% (c) -2.5% (d) -2.5% (e) -5.0% (f) -5.0% repeat (e) & (f) twice see notes below	nominal stator terminal volts unity or lagging <i>power factor</i> system base <i>load</i> <i>Generator</i> outputs: (i) 50% rated MW (ii) 100 % rated MW all tests in (i) should precede test in (ii) smaller step <i>changes</i> should precede larger step <i>changes</i>
C3	As for C2 but with the <i>power system stabiliser</i> in service and with the system conditions (i) and (ii) as indicated in column 3 (Test Conditions)	As in C2	As in C2, but system base <i>load</i> with no other <i>Generation</i> on the same bus system maximum <i>load</i> and maximum <i>Generation</i> on same bus
C4	Manual variation of <i>Generator</i> open circuit <i>voltage</i>	Stator terminal <i>voltage</i> (U_t) (a) increase from 0.5 pu to 1.1 pu (b) decrease from 1.1 pu to 0.5 pu	in 0.1 pu step for U_t between 0.5 – 0.9 pu on 0.5 pu step for U_t between 0.9 – 1.1 pu
C5	<i>Load</i> rejection (<i>active power</i>)	(a) 25% rated MW (b) 50% rated MW (c) 100% rated MW	nominal stator terminal volts unity <i>power factor</i> smaller amount should precede larger amount of <i>load</i> rejection
C6	<i>Load</i> rejection (<i>reactive power</i>)	(5) -30% rated MVar (6) -25% rated MVar	nominal stator terminal volts 0 or minimum MW output
C7	<i>Load</i> rejection (<i>reactive power</i>)	(a) -30% rated MVar	nominal stator terminal volts Excitation Manual Control

Attachment 6 *Access Application* schedule

The following Schedule of information to be submitted in an *Access Application* is pursuant to Schedule 2 of the Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Code.

A6.1 *Access Application* information requirements

- (a) A person who is not an existing *User* and who wants the *Network Operator* to provide it with one or more *access services* shall make an *Access Application* in accordance with this schedule.
- (b) A person who is an existing *User* and who wants the *Network Operator* to provide it with one or more *access services* (including additional capacity) in addition to those which the *User* has access already shall make an *Access Application* in accordance with this schedule.
- (c) An *Access Application* may only be made for the provision of *access services* that the applicant wishes the *Network Operator* to commence to provide within 3 years of the date of the *Access Application*.
- (d) An *Access Application* shall contain the following information:
 - (1) the name and address of the person making the *Access Application* and of any other persons for whom that person is acting in making the *Access Application*;
 - (2) the type of network *access services* requested, when those *access services* are required and for how long they will be required;
 - (3) the entry points and exit points in respect of which access is being applied for and the capacity (expressed in kVA) for each of those entry points and exit points for which access is being applied for;
 - (4) the type of *plant* in respect of which the *access services* are required and the configuration of that *plant*;
 - (5) where the entry points and exit points are to be on the electrical *network* and any alternative points (in order of preference);
 - (6) the expected maximum demand of the *plant connected* or to be *connected* at each of the entry points;
 - (7) the maximum *Generation* capacity and the proposed declared sent out capacity of the *Generation Units* (including embedded *Generation Units*) *connected* or to be *connected* at each of the exit points;
 - (8) the expected electricity production and consumption of the *plant connected* or to be *connected* at each of the entry points and exit points;
 - (9) when the applicant expects the *plant* to be *connected* at each of the entry points and exit points to be in service (if appropriate);
 - (10) details of the *controllers* of the *plant connected* or to be *connected* at each of the entry points and exit points;

- (11) the proposed design of each of the *connections* (if appropriate);
 - (12) the arrangements which the applicant proposes to enter into in relation to the construction and *supply* of the *connection* in respect of the *plant*;
 - (13) the nature of any disturbing *load* (size of disturbing component MW/MVAr, duty cycle, nature of power electronic *plant* which may produce harmonic distortion);
 - (14) any information as required by this *Network Technical Code*;
 - (15) commercial information concerning the applicant to allow the *Network Operator* to make an assessment of the ability of the applicant to meet its obligations under any *Access Agreement* that results from the *Access Application*; and
 - (16) any other information reasonably required by the *Network Operator*;
- and may specify that the applicant wishes the *Network Operator* to make a preliminary assessment of the application.

The following clauses are intended to provide a guide for existing and intending *network Users (Access Applicants)* on the process of *connection* to the network. Full details of the network connection procedures and the obligations of participants and the *Network Operator* are contained in Chapter 2 and Schedules 2, to 5 of the Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Code.

A6.2 Access Application

- (a) The *Access Applicant* must lodge a written *Access Application* to the *Network Operator* containing the relevant information set out in Schedule 2 of the Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Code.
- (b) If necessary, the *Network Operator* may request further information from the *Access Applicant* within 7 days of its lodgement.
- (c) Within 7 days of receiving an *Access Application* or further information, the *Network Operator* must notify:
 - (1) the Utilities Commission; and
 - (2) any *network User* that would be materially affected by the *Access Application*.

A6.3 Initial response to Access Application by the Network Operator

- (a) The *Network Operator* shall provide the *Access Applicant* with a written initial response to an *Access Application*:
 - (1) within 10 days of receiving an *Access Application* from an existing *network user*; or
 - (2) within 21 days of receiving an *Access Application* from a new *network user*; or
 - (3) where the *Network Operator* has requested further information, within an equivalent period after receiving that information.

- (b) The initial response by the *Network Operator* in respect of an *Access Application* shall include the following information:
 - (1) the period within which the *Network Operator* is able to make a preliminary assessment of the *Access Application*; and
 - (2) an estimate of the reasonable expenses expected to be incurred by the *Network Operator* in processing the *Access Application*, preparing an initial response, carrying out a preliminary assessment, making an offer and negotiating the *Access Agreement*.

A6.4 Preliminary assessment of *Access Application* by the *Network Operator*

- (a) If a preliminary assessment is requested in the *Access Application*, the *Network Operator* must make the assessment and give the *Access Applicant* a report of the assessment within the time period specified in the initial response to the *Access Application*.
- (b) A preliminary assessment shall include the following information:
 - (1) whether it is likely that there is sufficient spare capacity to provide the *access services* requested in the *Access Application* or whether the *electricity network* will have to be *augmented* to provide those services;
 - (2) whether it is likely that any *connection* will have to be installed or upgraded to provide the *connection services* (if any) requested in the *Access Application*;
 - (3) whether or not a capital contribution will be required of the *Access Applicant* and if so, an indication of the likely amount of that capital contribution;
- (c) The information provided under clauses A6.3(b)(1), (b)(2) and (b)(3) above may be subject to change under conditions specified by the *Network Operator* in the preliminary assessment.

A6.5 Access offer

- (a) The *Network Operator* must make an access offer to provide to the *Access Applicant* the *network access services* requested in the *Access Application* within:
 - (1) 30 days of receiving the request; or
 - (2) if within that period the *Network Operator* has requested further information, within 30 days after receiving the information;unless agreed by the *Access Applicant* and the *Network Operator*, or as otherwise approved by the Utilities Commission.

- (b) The access offer by the *Network Operator* may require the *Access Applicant* to make a contribution towards capital investment to provide the requested access.
- (c) If the *Access Applicant* does not conclude negotiations with the *Network Operator* within 60 days, the access offer expires and the *Access Application* lapses.

A6.6 Access Agreement

- (a) The *Network Operator* will prepare an *Access Agreement* setting out the specific technical, commercial and legal conditions under which access to the network is provided, in accordance with Schedule 4 of the Electricity Networks (Third Party Access) Code.
- (b) The *Access Applicant* must execute the *Access Agreement* before a new or modified *connection* will be made to the *network* and is required to abide by the terms and conditions of the *Access Agreement* and this *Code*.